



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

BLACKIE'S

COMPREHENSIVE

SCHOOL SERIES



HISTORY-SCOTLAND







BLACKIE'S
COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL SERIES.

HISTORY OF SCOTLAND:

FROM AGRICOLA'S INVASION
TO THE UNION OF THE CROWNS.

SPECIALLY ADAPTED TO
THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE EDUCATION CODE FOR SCOTLAND,
STANDARD IV.

BY
ALEXANDER WHAMOND, F.E.I.S.

QUESTIONS AND MAP BY
JAMES MACAULAY, F.E.I.S.



LONDON:
BLACKIE & SON, 49 & 50 OLD BAILEY, E.C.
GLASGOW, EDINBURGH, AND DUBLIN.

1880.

22933

2

PREFACE.

THIS Book forms a brief but complete HISTORY OF SCOTLAND from Agricola's Invasion to the Union of the Crowns. It is adapted for use in all classes of schools, both public and private; but it has been specially prepared to meet the requirements of Standard IV. of the Scottish Education Code.

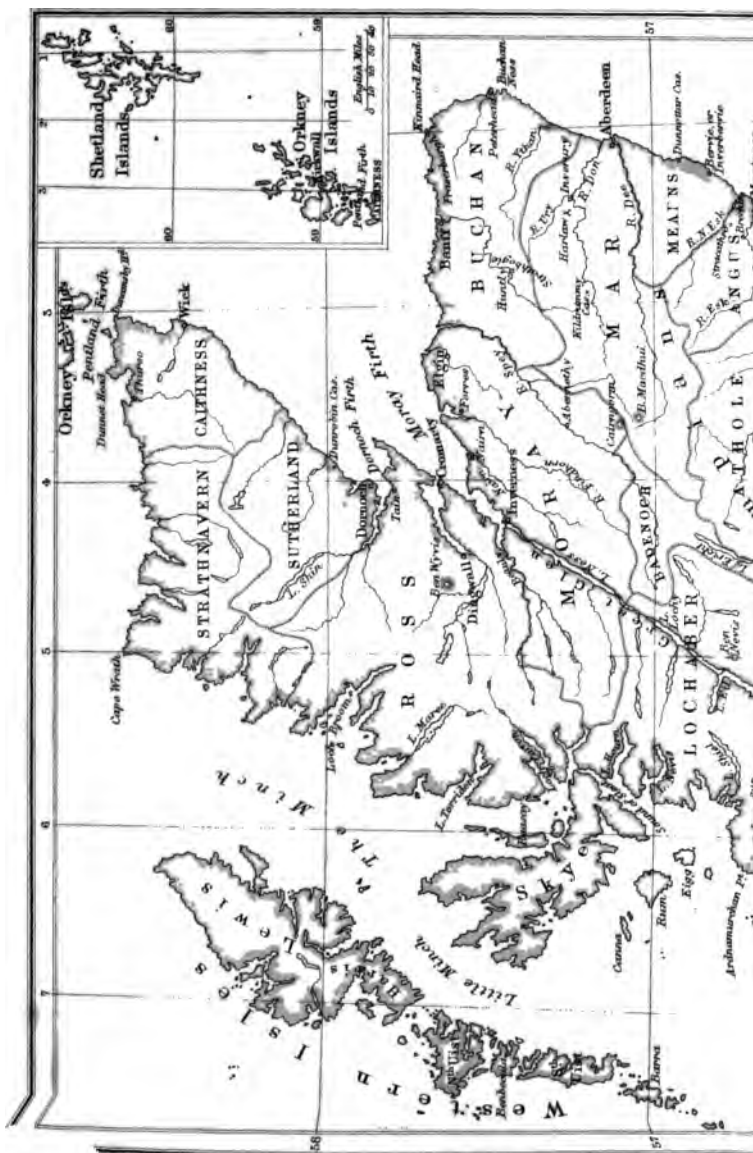
It has been objected to the small histories in common use that they are too meagre to be interesting. On the other hand one of Her Majesty's Inspectors, while granting this, has said that if the history is not short it is difficult for children to make a good *pass* at an examination. To remove the objection against meagre histories, a pretty full detail of events has been given. To ensure, as far as possible, a good *pass* a summary of each chapter of narrative, and a full chronological table of contents have been given, both of which may with advantage be committed to memory.

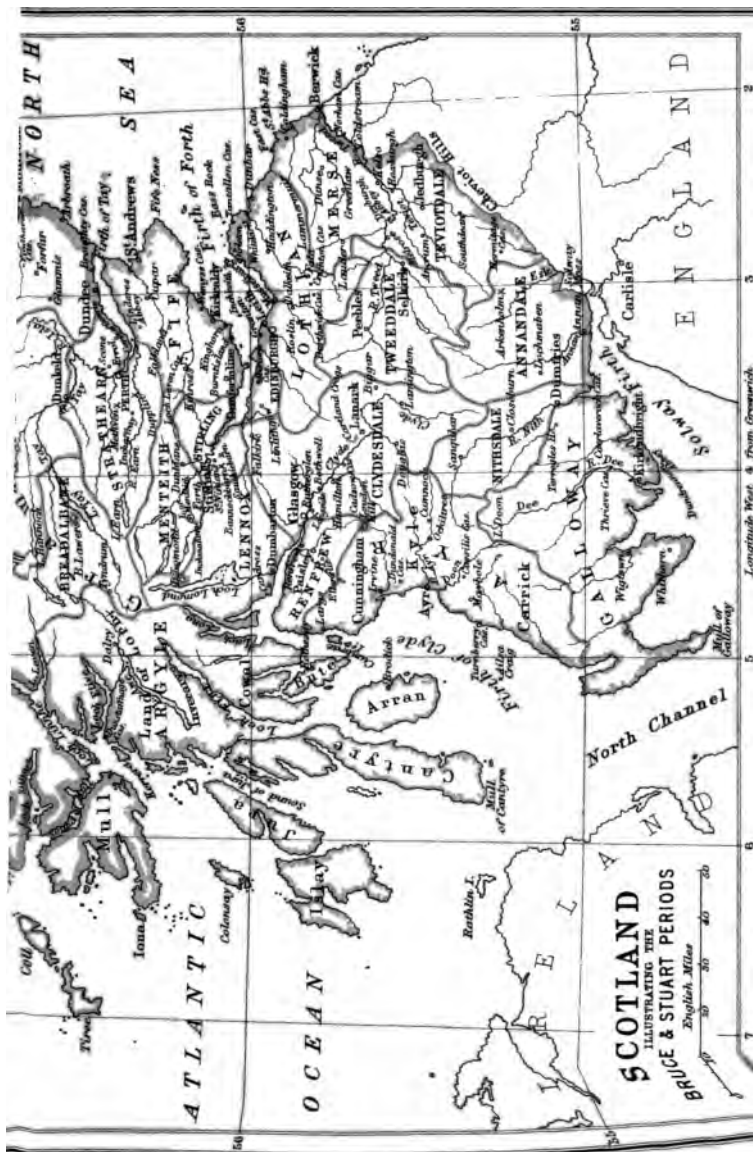
The questions are full, and adapted to test the scholar's knowledge.

The map has been prepared specially for this History, and contains the names of nearly all the places mentioned in it. A list of places not generally found in school maps, with the position of each, has been added. This, it is believed, will form a valuable supplement to the map.

GLASGOW, Dec. 1879.









CONTENTS.

CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED.

CHAPTER I.

The Roman Period.—55 B.C.—446 A.D.

Date.	Page
55 B.C. Cesar invades Britain, . . .	13
43 A.D. Plautius and Vespasian gain a footing in the island, . . .	13
80. Agricola enters Scotland, . . .	14
84. Battle of Mons Grampius, . . .	14
Britain discovered to be an island, . . .	14
120. Hadrian's Wall built, . . .	14
139. Antoninus' Wall built, . . .	14
208. Severus determines to annex the whole island, . . .	16
211. Severus dies at York, . . .	16
296. Picts first mentioned, . . .	16
360. Scots first mentioned, . . .	16
368. Scots and Picts sack London, . .	16
410. Honorius writes a letter to the cities of Britain. The Roman legions withdrawn, . . .	17
418. The Romans return and defeat the Picts and Scots, . . .	17
420. Final departure of the Romans, .	17
446. The Britons in vain appeal to the Romans for help, . . .	17

CHAPTER II.

From the Departure of the Romans to Kenneth Macalpin.—420-843 A.D.

432. Death of St. Ninian, . . .	19
449. Saxon immigration—Hengist and Horsa, . . .	18
503. Foundation of the Scottish monarchy, . . .	20
547. The Northumbrian kingdom formed, . . .	18
563. Columba comes to Iona, . . .	20
590. Arrival of St. Mungo, . . .	19
617. Prince Edwin founds Edinburgh, .	19
637. Battle of Moyra, . . .	21
685. Battle of Nechtansmere, . . .	19
756. Dumbarton taken by Saxons and Picts, . . .	19
836. Accession of Kenneth Macalpin, .	21
843. Picts and Scots united, . . .	21

CHAPTER III.

From Kenneth Macalpin to Macbeth.—843-1056 A.D.

Date.	Page
859. Death of Kenneth Macalpin, . .	22
937. Battle of Brunanburgh, . . .	23
945. Cumberland given to Malcolm, King of Scots, . . .	23
974. Battle of Luncarty, . . .	23
1010. Battle of Mortlach, . . .	23
1018. Battle of Carham. The Tweed made the southern boundary of Scotland, . . .	23
1039. Death of King Duncan, . . .	24
1056. Macbeth slain in Strathbogie, .	24

CHAPTER IV.

Malcolm III.—1057-1093 A.D.

1057. Accession of Malcolm III., . .	25
1066. Norman Conquest—Battle of Hastings, . . .	25
1068. Edgar Atheling takes refuge in Scotland, . . .	26
1087. Death of William the Conqueror, .	27
1093. Malcolm slain at Alnwick, . .	28
Death of Queen Margaret, . . .	28

CHAPTER V.

Donald Bane to David I.—1093-1153 A.D.

1093. Accession of Donald Bane, . .	30
1094. Duncan drives out Donald Bane and seizes the throne, . .	30
1095. Donald Bane restored, . . .	30
1097. Donald Bane deposed, . . .	30
Edgar placed on the throne, . .	30
1100. Matilda married to Henry I., .	30
1107. Death of Edgar and accession of Alexander I., . . .	30
1120. Rebellion of the Maormors of Ross and Mearns, . . .	30
1124. Death of Alexander I.—Accession of David I., . . .	30
1127. David I. and Stephen swear to maintain the right of Maud to the throne of England, . . .	32
1135. David invades England, . . .	32

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1138. Battle of the Standard, . . .	33	1294. The Scots enter into a league	
1139. Treaty of Durham, . . .	33	with France,	50
1152. Prince Henry dies, . . .	33		
1153. Death of David I., . . .	33		
CHAPTER VI.		CHAPTER X.	
Malcolm IV. to Alexander II.—		Usurpation of Edward I.—Wallace, —	
1153-1249 A.D.		1296-1297 A.D.	
1153. Accession of Malcolm IV., . .	35	1296. Edward I. takes Berwick, . .	52
1157. Malcolm gives up his claim to		Baliol submits to Edward, . .	53
Northumberland,	35	Edward carries away the Stone	
1164. Somerled of the Isles defeated		of Destiny,	53
and slain,	35	Edward garrisons Scottish	
1165. Death of Malcolm IV., . . .	35	castles with English soldiers, .	54
Accession of William the Lion, .	36	1297. Wallace marries Marion Brad-	
1174. William the Lion taken prison-		fute,	54
er—Treaty of Falaise, . . .	36	Wallace kills Hazelrigg, the	
1189. Independence of Scotland re-		governor of Lanark, . . .	55
stored by Richard I., . . .	37	The Scots surrender at Irvine, .	56
1222. Attempts to settle the border		Wallace besieges the castle of	
line between the two countries, .	37	Dundee,	56
1224. Death of William the Lion—		Wallace defeats the English at	
Accession of Alexander II., . .	37	Stirling,	56
1249. Death of Alexander II., . .	38		
CHAPTER VII.		CHAPTER XI.	
Alexander III.—1249-1286 A.D.		Wallace Continued.—1297-1305 A.D.	
1249. Accession of Alexander III., .	39	1297. Wallace invades England, . .	59
1260. Birth of the Princess Margaret, .	41	Wallace made guardian of	
1263. Battle of Largs,	42	Scotland,	59
1266. The Isles given up by Norway		1298. Battle of Falkirk,	60
to Scotland,	42	1303. Battle of Roslin,	61
1281. The Princess Margaret married		Death of Sir Thomas Maule at	
to Eric of Norway,	42	Brechin,	61
1285. The king marries Joleta, . .	42	Siege of Stirling Castle, . . .	61
1286. Death of Alexander III., . .	42	1305. Betrayal and execution of	
		Wallace,	62
CHAPTER VIII.		CHAPTER XII.	
Condition of Scotland before		King Robert the Bruce.—1306-1315 A.D.	
the Death of Alexander III., . .	44	1306. Revolt of Robert Bruce, . .	64
CHAPTER IX.		His Flight to Scotland, . . .	65
The Maid of Norway—the Competitors		Murder of Comyn,	65
for the Crown.—1286-1294 A.D.		Coronation of Bruce,	65
1286. The Estates appoint six guar-		Edward I. sets out for Scotland, .	66
dians of the kingdom,	47	Battle of Methven,	66
1290. The Treaty of Birgham agreed to,		Bruce defeats the Comyns at	
Death of the Maid of Norway, . .	48	Loch Awe,	66
1291. Edward I. meets the competi-		Bruce sends his queen to Kil-	
tors for the crown at Norham, . .	48	drummy,	67
1292. John Baliol declared King of		Bruce takes refuge in the Isle	
Scotland,	50	of Rathlin,	67
Coronation of Baliol,	50	1307. Bruce passes from Rathlin to	
1294. Philip of France cites Ed-		Ayrshire and takes Turnberry	
ward I. to appear before him		Castle,	67
<i>as his vassal</i> ,	50	Bruce tracked by a bloodhound, .	67
		Battle of Loudon Hill,	67
		Death of Edward I.,	68

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1307. Edward II. leads back his army to England,	68	Duke of Clarence, should be his successor rejected,	84
Bruce defeats Comyn, Earl of Buchan, at Inverury,	68	1369. Truce for fourteen years entered into,	84
1313. Edward Bruce besieges Stirling Castle,	68	1370. Death of David II.,	84
1314. Battle of Bannockburn,	69		
CHAPTER XIII.		CHAPTER XV.	
King Robert the Bruce (Continued).—1314-1329 A.D.		Robert II.—1370-1390 A.D.	
1315. Edward Bruce goes to Ireland,	75	1370. Accession of Robert II.,	85
1316. He is crowned King of Ireland,	75	1383. Truce for two years adjusted,	86
1318. He is killed at Dundalk,	75	Thirty French knights land at Montrose,	86
Bruce captures Berwick,	75	1385. Sir John de Vienne's expedition to Scotland,	87
1319. The English try to recover Berwick,	75	1388. Battle of Otterburn,	88
The Chapter of Mitton,	76	1390. Death of Robert II.,	89
1322. The English again invade Scotland,	76		
The English king nearly captured at Bland Abbey,	76	CHAPTER XVI.	
1327. Death of Edward II.,	76	Robert III.—1390-1406 A.D.	
Douglas and Randolph invade England,	77	1390. Accession of Robert III.,	91
Douglas nearly captures Edward III.,	77	1391. Wolf of Badenoch burns Elgin Cathedral,	91
1328. Independence of Scotland acknowledged at York,	77	1392. Battle of Gasklune,	91
Treaty of Northampton,	78	1396. Battle of the Clans at Perth,	92
		1398. First Scottish dukes created,	93
CHAPTER XIV.		1400. Henry IV. enters Scotland with an army,	93
David I.—1329-1370 A.D.		1402. Battle of Homildon Hill,	93
1331. David II. crowned at Scone,	80	David, Duke of Rothesay, starved to death,	94
1332. Death of Randolph,	80	1403. Battle of Shrewsbury,	94
Battle of Dupplin,	81	1405. Prince James captured by the English,	95
David sent to France,	81	1406. Death of Robert III.,	95
1333. Battle of Halidon Hill,	81		
Recovery of Berwick by the English,	81	CHAPTER XVII.	
1337. The Scots under Sir Andrew Murray recover many fortresses,	81	James I.—1406-1437 A.D.	
1339. Black Agnes defends Dunbar Castle,	82	1408. John Resceby burned at Perth,	97
Edward Balliol returns to England,	82	1411. Battle of Harlaw,	97
1341. David returns from France,	83	1413. St. Andrews University founded,	97
1346. Battle of Neville's Cross,	83	1419. Death of the Regent Albany,	97
Capture of David,	83	1421. The Scots in France win the battle of Baugé,	98
1353. Edward III. invades Scotland,	83	1424. Battle of Verneuil,	98
1357. Release of the captive king,	83	James I. returns to Scotland,	98
1362. Queen Joanna dies,	83	1425. Regent Murdoch and his sons beheaded,	99
1363. The king marries Margaret Logie,	83	1427. The king holds a Parliament at Inverness,	99
The king's proposal that Lionel,		1431. Donald Balloch defeats the Earl of Mar at Lochaber,	100
		1432. Paul Crawford burned at St. Andrews,	100
		1434. Marriage of the king's daughter to the Dauphin, afterwards Louis XI. of France,	100

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1436. The king holds Christmas at Perth,	100	1469. Fall of the Boyd family, . . .	118
1437. Murder of James I.,	101	The king's sister divorced from Arran and married to Lord Hamilton,	118
CHAPTER XVIII.		1476. The Lord of the Isles created a Lord of Parliament, . . .	118
Condition of the Country during the Fourteenth and beginning of the Fifteenth Centuries,	103	Death of the Earl of Mar in Craigmillar Castle,	119
CHAPTER XIX.		1482. The king's favourites hanged, . . .	120
James II.—1437-1460 A.D.		1188. Battle of Sauchieburn and death of the king,	120
1437. Accession of James II., . . .	108	CHAPTER XXI.	
The queen takes the young king to Edinburgh Castle, . . .	108	James IV.—1488-1513 A.D.	
The queen with her son escapes to Stirling,	109	1488. Accession of James IV., . . .	123
1439. Death of Earl Douglas, . . .	109	1189. Rising of the Earl of Lennox and Lord Forbes to avenge the death of James III., . . .	123
The queen marries the Black Knight of Lorn,	109	1491. The Estates offer a reward to discover the murderers of James III.,	124
1440. Earl Douglas and his brother David put to death,	109	1492. Glasgow Cathedral made a metropolitan church,	124
1443. William Douglas succeeds "James the Fat," and marries the Fair Maid of Gallo-way,	110	1494. The Archbishop of Glasgow sends up thirty Lollards to be punished by the civil power, . . .	124
1449. The king marries Mary, daughter of the Duke of Gueldres, . . .	110	Aberdeen University founded, . . .	124
1451. Douglas beheads Maclellan, the tutor of Bomby,	111	1495. Perkin Warbeck comes to Scotland,	124
1452. The King kills Douglas in Stirling Castle,	112	James invades Northumberland in behalf of Warbeck, . . .	125
The Earl of Huntly defeats the Lindays of Finhaven,	112	1497. Second expedition in favour of Warbeck,	125
1454. The Red Douglas puts down the Black,	113	1499. Warbeck hanged at Tyburn, . . .	125
1460. Death of James II.,	113	1502. The king marries Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., . . .	126
CHAPTER XX.		1503. Resolutions passed for civilizing the Highlands,	126
James III.—1460-1488 A.D.		1504. Raid of Eakdale,	126
1460. Accession of James III., . . .	116	1505. Printing introduced into Scotland,	126
1461. Henry VI. takes refuge in Scotland,	116	1512. Lord Howard defeats Sir Andrew Barton,	127
Rebellion of the Lord of the Isles,	116	1513. Battle of Flodden and death of the king,	128
1465. Rise of the Boyd family, . . .	117	CHAPTER XXII.	
Death of Bishop Kennedy,	117	James V.—1513-1542 A.D.	
1466. Lord Boyd carries off the King from Linlithgow to Edinburgh,	117	1513. Accession of James V., . . .	132
1467. Thomas Boyd created Earl of Arran,	117	The queen appointed regent and guardian of the young king,	133
Arran marries the king's sister, . . .	117	1514. The king's mother marries Angus,	133
1469. Orkney and Shetland given as a dowry to James III., . . .	118	1515. Albany made regent,	133

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1515. Albany gets the young king out of the queen's hands, . . .	133	of Scots to be married to his son Edward, Prince of Wales, . . .	143
1517. Albany returns to France, . . .	134	1542. Henry sends home the "Assured Scots" to further his designs, . . .	143
Murder of De la Bastie, . . .	134	The young queen and her mother removed from Linlithgow to Stirling, . . .	144
The queen and Angus divorced, . . .	134	1543. The marriage and alliance treaties ratified at Edinburgh, . . .	144
1520. Skirmish of "Cleanse the Causeway," . . .	135	The Scots deny that the treaties were properly ratified, . . .	144
1521. Albany comes back from France, . . .	135	Henry seizes and detains Scottish merchant vessels, . . .	144
Henry VIII. urges the Scots to dismiss Albany, . . .	135	1544. Henry declares war, . . .	145
1522. The Scots move towards the western Border with 80,000 men, . . .	135	Hertford burns Leith and Edinburgh, . . .	145
1523. Lord Dacre burns the town of Jedburgh, . . .	135	Battle of Ancrum Moor, . . .	145
Albany brings troops from France, . . .	135	Hertford's second expedition, . . .	145
Albany lays siege to Wark Castle, . . .	136	Hertford destroys Kelso, Melrose, Roxburgh, Dryburgh, and Coldingham, . . .	146
1524. Albany finally leaves Scotland, . . .	136	George Wishart teaches Greek at Montrose, . . .	146
"Erection of the king," . . .	136	1546. Martyrdom of Wishart, . . .	146
1526. Angus gets possession of the king, . . .	136	Murder of Cardinal Beaton, . . .	146
1528. The king escapes from Falkland, . . .	136	1547. Surrender of the castle of St. Andrews, . . .	147
The estates of Angus forfeited, . . .	137	Battle of Pinkie Cleuch, . . .	147
Angus takes refuge in England, . . .	137	Queen Mary removed from Stirling to the island of Inchmahome, . . .	148
Martyrdom of Patrick Hamilton, . . .	137	1548. A French fleet comes to Leith with 6000 auxiliaries, . . .	148
1531. The king hangs the Border chiefs, . . .	137	The queen sent to France, . . .	148
The crown takes to itself the government of the Western Highlands, . . .	137	1554. Mary of Guise made regent, . . .	149
Alliance of Scotland courted by the nations of Europe, . . .	138	1557. The first Covenant signed, . . .	150
1537. The king marries Magdalen of France, . . .	138	1558. Martyrdom of Walter Mill, . . .	150
1538. The king marries Mary of Lorraine, daughter of the Duke of Guise, . . .	138	Arran created Duke of Chatelherault, . . .	149
Lady Glamis burned on the Castlehill of Edinburgh, . . .	138	The regent promotes Frenchmen to offices of trust, . . .	149
1539. Cardinal Beaton made Archbishop of St. Andrews, . . .	139	Mary marries the Dauphin of France, . . .	149
1540. James visits the Orkney and Western Isles, . . .	139	1559. The Queen of Scots becomes Queen of France, . . .	149
1541. Death of the king's children, . . .	139	Elizabeth's minister, Cecil, endeavours to bring about an alliance between the Scots and the English, . . .	150
1542. Rout of Solway Moss, . . .	139	Knox returns to Scotland, . . .	150
Birth of Mary Queen of Scots, . . .	140	The church makes an attempt at reformation, . . .	150
Death of James V., . . .	140	Knox preaches at Perth, a riot ensues, and the monasteries and churches are destroyed, . . .	151
		1560. The regent gets troops from France, . . .	151

CHAPTER XXIII.

Mary Queen of Scots.—1542-1560 A.D.

1542. Accession of Mary Queen of Scots, . . .	143
Henry VIII. desires the Queen	

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1560. The Lords of the Congregation besiege Leith,	152	1566. Mary visits Bothwell at Hermitage Castle,	164
Death of Mary of Guise,	152	The young prince baptized at Stirling,	164
Treaty of Edinburgh ratified,	152	Darnley falls ill of a skin disease,	164
The Reformation accomplished,	152	1567. The queen visits him at Glasgow and brings him to Kirk of Field,	165
		Murder of Darnley,	165
		Bothwell accused of the murder,	166
		Bothwell carries off the queen to Dunbar,	166
		Bothwell obtains a divorce from his wife Lady Jane Gordon,	166
		The queen marries Bothwell,	167
		The queen surrenders at Catterberry Hill,	167
		Bothwell escapes to Dunbar,	168
		The queen sent to Lochleven,	168
		The queen abdicates in favour of her son,	169
		CHAPTER XXV.	
		James VI.—1567-1603 A.D.	
1560. Francis II., Queen Mary's husband, dies,	156	1567. Coronation of James VI.,	173
The queen's disposal in marriage interests the courts of Europe,	156	Moray accepts the regency,	173
1561. Mary returns to Scotland,	157	The command of Edinburgh Castle given to Kirkcaldy of Grange,	173
The Master of Lindsay threatens death to the priests celebrating mass in the queen's chapel,	158	Acts passed in 1560 for the abolition of Popery ratified,	173
The queen forbids changes to be made on the Protestant forms of worship,	158	1568. Moray causes four of the subordinate actors in Darnley's murder to be hanged,	174
1562. The Lord James, Earl of Mar, leads an army to the Border and apprehends the most noted Border thieves,	158	Queen Mary escapes from Lochleven,	174
The queen and the Lord James, now Earl of Moray, lead an army to the north,	159	The queen's forces assemble at Hamilton Palace,	174
Defeat of Huntly at Corrichie,	159	Battle of Langside,	175
Chatelard put to death,	160	Queen Mary takes refuge in England,	175
1565. Lord Darnley visits Wemyss Castle,	160	Queen Elizabeth removes Mary from Carlisle to Bolton Castle,	175
The queen marries Darnley,	161	Conference meets at York to try the question of Mary's complicity in Darnley's murder,	176
Moray and the Protestant leaders take refuge in England,	161	The estates of the Hamiltons forfeited,	176
The cause of the Reformation in danger,	161	Moray marches to the north and holds his court at Aberdeen,	176
Darnley demands the crown matrimonial,	162	1570. The Regent Moray shot,	177
1566. Darnley becomes jealous of Rizzio,	162	Lennox becomes regent,	177
Murder of Rizzio,	162		
Moray and the exiled Lords return to Edinburgh,	163		
The queen studies revenge, and receives her husband into favour,	163		
The queen and Darnley escape to Dunbar,	163		
Bothwell raises a force for the queen's protection and escorts her back to Edinburgh,	163		
Birth of James VI.,	164		

CONTENTS.

9

Date.	Page	Date.	Page
1570. Lethington and Kirkaldy of Grange go over to the queen's party,	177	1585. The Master of Gray becomes the king's favourite,	180
1571. The Castle of Dumbarton taken for the king,	177	1586. The Babington Conspiracy discovered,	180
The Estates try to hold a Parliament at Edinburgh, but adjourn to Stirling,	177	The trial of Queen Mary,	181
Lennox mortally wounded at Stirling,	177	1587. Mary Queen of Scots beheaded, 181	
The Earl of Mar becomes regent,	177	King James tries to reconcile his nobles,	181
1572. John Knox denounces the massacre of St. Bartholomew, and calls the King of France a murderer,	178	1589. The king marries Anne, Princess of Denmark,	181
Death of the Regent Mar,	178	1590. James with his queen arrives at Leith,	181
Earl of Morton becomes regent,	178	1592. The Estates pass an act abolishing bishoprics,	181
Death of John Knox,	178	1593. Marischal College at Aberdeen founded,	181
1573. Surrender of Edinburgh Castle, 178		The last Border clan battle fought,	181
Grange is hanged and Lethington commits suicide,	178	1600. The Gowrie Conspiracy,	182
1581. Execution of Morton,	178	1603. Death of Queen Elizabeth,	182
Lennox and Arran become the king's advisers,	179	James VI. becomes James I. of England,	182
1582. The Raid of Ruthven,	179		
1584. The Earl of Gowrie taken and executed,	180		

CHAPTER XXVI.

Condition of the Country from the death of James I. to the union of the crowns, 186

SUPPLEMENT TO MAP.

Abercorn Castle, in Linlithgowshire, dismantled in 1455.

Albany, a district including Glenorchy, Athole, Appin, Breadalbane, and part of Lochaber.

Ancrum Moor, near the junction of the Aie with the Teviot, in Roxburghshire.

Arkinholm, on the Esk, in Dumfriesshire.

Athole, a district in the north of Perthshire.

Badenoch, a district in the south and east of Inverness.

Beaton's Mill, on the Bannock, in Stirlingshire.

Benachie, a hill 3 miles north of Inverury, in Aberdeenshire.

Black-Castle, east of Borthwick Castle, in Edinburghshire.

Boroughmuir, at Morningside, south-west of Edinburgh.

Borthwick Castle, south of Dalkeith, in the east of Edinburghshire.

Bothwellhaugh, near Bothwell, in Lanarkshire.

Branxholm, near Hawick, in Roxburghshire.

Broughty Castle, on Broughty Craig, south-east of Broughty Ferry, in Forfarshire.

Buccleuch, in Selkirkshire, south-west of Hawick, part of the parish of Ettrick.

Buchan, a district from the Ythan to the Spey.

Cadzow Castle, on the Avon, in Lanarkshire.

Caerlaverock Castle, at the mouth of the Nith, in Dumfriesshire.

Cambuskenneth Abbey, on the Forth, 1 mile north-east of Stirling.

Carberry Hill, 2 miles south-east of Musselburgh, in Edinburghshire.

Cardross, on the Clyde, $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles below Dumbarton, in Dumbartonshire.

Carrick, the southern division of Ayrshire.

Cartland Crag, on the Clyde near Lanark, in Lanarkshire.

Cowal, the district north of Kyles of Bute, in Argyleshire.

Craigmillar Castle, about 3 miles south of Edinburgh, in Edinburghshire.

Cunningham, the northern division of Ayrshire.

Dalry, near Tyndrum in the west of Perthshire.

Dirleton Castle, in the north of Haddingtonshire, about 3 miles west of North Berwick.

Douglas Castle, on the Douglas, in Lanarkshire.

Dryburgh Abbey, 4 miles south-east of Melrose, in Berwickshire.

Dundrennan Abbey, about 5 miles south-east of Kirkcudbright.

Dunnottar Castle, on the coast, 2 miles south of Stonehaven, in Kincardineshire.

Dunstaffnage Castle, on Loch Etive, near Oban, in Argyleshire.

Dupplin, on the Earn, south-west of Perth.

Ellerslie or Elderslie, about 2 miles west of Paisley.

Errol, in the Carse of Gowrie, Perthshire.

Fala Moor, on the south-east border of Edinburghshire.

Falkland Palace, about 8 miles south-west of Cupar, in Fifeshire.

Fast Castle, near St. Abb's Head, Berwickshire.

Finhaven, in the centre of Forfarshire.

Glamis Castle, about 5 miles south-west of Forfar.

Gowrie House, in Perth.

Halidon Hill, near Berwick.

Harlaw, near Inverury, in Aberdeenshire.

Hermitage Castle, in the south-west of Roxburghshire.

Home or Hume Castle, on the Blackadder, in Berwickshire.

Huntly Castle, near the Deveron, in Aberdeenshire.

Inchaffray, in the parish of Madderdy, Perthshire.

Inchkeith, an island in the Firth of Forth.

Inchmahome, an islet in the Lake of Menteith, Perthshire.

Kildrummy Castle, near the Don, in Aberdeenshire.

Kinloss, on the coast in Morayshire.

Kirkliston, a parish in Edinburghshire and Linlithgowshire.

Kyle, the middle division of Ayrshire.

Lamington, on the Clyde, in Lanarkshire.

Langside, 2 miles south of Glasgow.

Langton Castle, nearly in the centre of Berwickshire.

Lindores Abbey, on the Firth of Tay, in Fifeshire.

Lochaber, a district in the south-west of Inverness.

Lochleven Castle, on an island in Lochleven, Kinross.

Lorn, a district adjoining Loch Awe, in Argyleshire.

Loudon Hill, 7 miles east of Kilmarnock, in Ayrshire.

Mar, a district on the upper Dee, in Aberdeenshire.

Melrose Abbey, on the Tweed, in Roxburghshire.

Methven, 6 miles west of Perth.

Pinkie, 5 miles east of Edinburgh.

Restalrig, in the parish of South Leith, Edinburghshire.

Roslin, 7 miles south of Edinburgh, in Edinburghshire.

Sauchieburn, east of Bannockburn, in Stirlingshire.

Scone, on the Tay, near Perth.

Seton Castle, near Tranent, in Haddingtonshire.

Southdean, a parish on the southern borders of Roxburghshire.

St. Duthac, in Ross-shire.

Strathbogie, a district on the Bogle, in Aberdeenshire.

Tantallon Castle, near North Berwick, in Haddingtonshire.

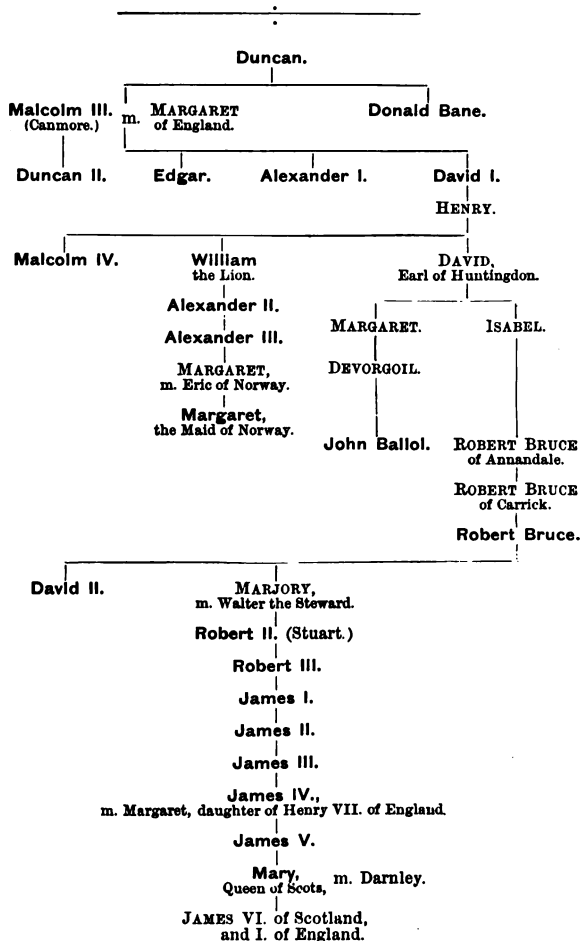
Thrieve Castle, on the Dee, 1½ mile from Castle Douglas, in Kirkcudbrightshire.

Turnberry Castle, 6 miles north of Girvan, in Ayrshire.

Wemyss Castle, east of West Wemyss, in Fifeshire.

Whitekirk, between Dunbar and North Berwick, in Haddingtonshire.

GENEALOGY OF SCOTTISH SOVEREIGNS
FROM DUNCAN.



HISTORY OF SCOTLAND.

CHAPTER I.

THE ROMAN PERIOD, 55 B.C.—420 A.D., 475 Years.

Julius Cæsar invades Britain,	55 B.C.
Plantius and Vespasian gain a footing in the island, ..	43 A.D.
Agricola enters Scotland,	80
Battle of Mons Grampius,	84
Hadrian's Wall built,	120
Antoninus' Wall built,	139
Severus determines to annex the whole island,	208
Severus dies at York,	211
Picts first mentioned,	296
Scots first mentioned,	360
Scots and Picts sack London,	368
Honorius writes a letter to the cities of Britain, ..	410
Departure of the Romans,	420

1. The early history of our country, like that of most other nations, is involved in obscurity. When, or by whom, the country now called *Scotland* was first inhabited, we know not. The invasion of it by **Agricola** in the year **80 A.D.** is the first event in its history of which we have any written record. One hundred and thirty-five years previously, in the year **55 B.C.**, **Julius Cæsar** had landed on the southern shore of **Britain** with a fleet of 80 vessels and 12,000 troops; but a storm having shattered his fleet, he deemed it prudent to repair his ships and return to Gaul. Next summer he came back to Britain with a greater armament, crossed the Thames into the territory of **Cassivellaunus**, and compelled that chief to give him hostages and promise tribute; but he again returned to Gaul without having made any permanent conquest.

2. Britain was not again invaded by the Romans until the year **43**, when **Plantius** and **Vespasian**, the lieutenants of **Claudius**, gained a footing in the island. Between this date and the year **78**, the whole of South Britain, with the exception of North Wales, was annexed to the Roman Empire. The administration of the province and the completion of the conquest was then intrusted to **Julius Agricola**. By the terror of his arms, and his conciliatory

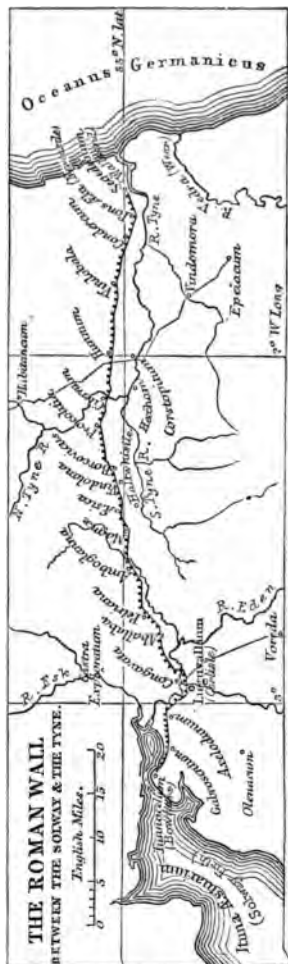
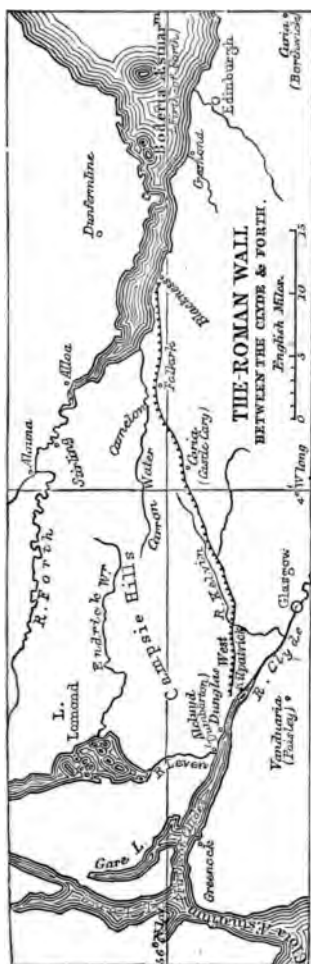
policy during the first two years of his administration, he so settled the country from the *Thames* to the *Severn*, and from the *Humber* to the *Dee*, that he was free to seek new conquests farther north.

3. In the year 80 he entered Scotland, and in two campaigns subdued the country as far as the *Firth of Forth*. From thence to the *Firth of Clyde* he ran a line of forts as a defence against the *Caledonians*, and to mark the northern limit of the empire. The Roman general might have been content to stay within this boundary, but having heard that the northern tribes were organizing a great confederacy against him, he resolved to march northwards beyond his forts and let the *Caledonians* feel the weight of the Roman arms. He proceeded along the east coast, and a fleet of transports attended to co-operate with the land forces. The *Caledonians*, though driven nigh to despair, did not wait to be attacked, but assaulted the camp of the ninth legion, and were with difficulty repulsed by *Agricola*, who came upon their rear.

4. In the year 84 the Romans again marched northwards as far as a place called *Mons Graupius* or *Grampius*—supposed to be *Ardoch*, in *Perthshire*—where they were attacked by an army of 30,000 men, under a native chief named *Galgacus*. Over this army the Romans gained a complete victory, leaving 10,000 of the *Caledonians* slaughtered on the field. The Roman loss is set down at 340. It was under *Agricola's* administration that the Roman fleet, while cruising round the northern coasts, discovered Britain to be an island.

5. After the recall of *Agricola* by the jealous *Domitian*, we know scarcely anything of the condition of the country till about the year 120, when we are told that the *Emperor Hadrian* “visited Britain, where he corrected many things, and first built a wall eighty miles in length, which divided the Romans from the *Barbarians*.” From the fact that this wall was built from the *Tyne* below *Newcastle* to *Bowness* on the *Solway*, we may conclude that *Agricola's* forts had not proved an effective barrier against the *Caledonians*, and that his conquests north of the *Tyne* and the *Solway* had not been well consolidated.

6. Using *Hadrian's Wall* as a base of operations against the northern tribes, the Romans appear to have again driven them beyond the limit where *Agricola* had raised his line of forts, for about the year 139 the legions of *Antoninus*, under *Lollius Urbicus*, made a wall with about 20 forts, from near *Blackness* on the *Forth*, to *West Kilpatrick* on the *Clyde*.



7. Though the people within the walls were for some time after this subject to the Romans, they never seem to have borne the yoke patiently. The *Mæatae*, as they were called, in their attacks upon the Romans, appear to have made common cause with the Caledonians who dwelt beyond the remotest rampart. The Emperor **Severus**, in 208, determined to put an end to their attacks by annexing the whole island. Though suffering from ill health he forced his way to almost the extreme end of the island. The natives never offered him battle, but they so harassed his march that he lost 50,000 men in the expedition. He appears on his return to have strengthened Hadrian's Wall, which is on that account sometimes called the *Wall of Severus*. He then retired to York, where he died in 211.

8. From the death of Severus to the departure of the Romans from Britain, there are but few records of events that happened north of the Tweed. The inhabitants of North Britain, hitherto called *Mæatians* and Caledonians, are henceforth spoken of as *Picts* and *Scots*.

9. The Picts are first mentioned about the year 296. They were probably the same people as the Caledonians; for they occupied the whole of the country north of the Forth and Clyde, except the Western Isles and part of Argyleshire. It is thought they were called *Picti*—the painted men—because like the Britons of Cæsar's time, and the New Zealanders of the present day, they painted or tattooed their bodies.

10. The Scots are first mentioned in the year 360 as united with the Picts and Saxons in "vexing the Britons with continued harassings." They came from Ireland, which for centuries was called *Scotia*, and gradually settling in the Western Isles and Argyle, they at length, in 503, formed a state called *Dalriada*.

11. In 368 the Scots and Picts penetrated into Romanised Britain as far as London, which they sacked; but when they were preparing to return with their booty to their own wilds, they were attacked by **Theodosius**, who defeated them, and drove them beyond the wall of Antoninus. Having recovered the district between the walls, he called it *Valentia* in honour of the reigning Emperor **Valens**. This restoration of the empire to the old boundary of the Forth and Clyde was probably of short duration, for we hear no more of the province, but much is said of the sufferings inflicted on the Britons by their northern neighbours.

12. The Romans were soon after attacked by the Vandals and other tribes, and being hard pressed by them, could give no efficient

protection to their British subjects. At length, in 410, the Emperor **Honorius** wrote a letter to the cities of Britain, telling them that in future they must protect themselves. The Roman legions were then withdrawn from Britain, and the Scots and Picts were not long in making another inroad into the unprotected country. In 418, at the prayer of the Britons, the Romans returned, repulsed the enemy, and tried to teach the Britons to protect themselves; but in 420 they again departed never to return. In 446 the Britons, by a letter inscribed "*The groans of the Britons*," again appealed to Rome for help against their northern foes, but the Romans, pressed by the Goths under the terrible Attila, had no help to give them. The Scots and Picts, however, were ere long kept in check by the *Saxons*, whose aid the Britons had invoked.

Summary.—Julius Cæsar invaded Britain in 55 B.C., but the Romans got no footing in the island till 43 A.D. Agricola extended the Roman conquests into North Britain in the year 80, built a line of forts between the Firths of Forth and Clyde, and defeated Galgacus in the battle of Mons Grampius. When Agricola was recalled, his forts proved insufficient to keep back the Caledonians. In 120 Hadrian built a barrier wall between the Tyne and the Solway. Severus, in 208, determined to annex the whole country, and marched through it with an army, but he had so little success that, on his return, he repaired Hadrian's Wall, and retired to York, where he died. The inhabitants of North Britain soon after became known as Scots and Picts. The Scots came from Ireland and settled in the Western Isles and Argyle, where they afterwards formed a state called Dalriada. The Picts, or painted men, were probably the Caledonians. The Romans repeatedly drove back their restless neighbours; but at length they themselves were attacked by the Vandals, and, in 410, had to depart, leaving their British subjects to defend themselves. At the entreaty of the Britons the Romans returned in 418 and gave them help against their northern foes; but in 420 the Romans departed never to return. The Scots and Picts had it all their own way till they were checked by the Saxons, whose aid the Britons had sought.

QUESTIONS.

1. When, and by what Roman general, was Scotland first invaded? Where, and when, did Julius Cæsar land? What was the result of his invasion?

2. What took place in 43 A.D.? In 78? What policy did Agricola adopt? What was the result of it?

3. What was the object of the line of forts from the Forth to the Clyde?

Why did he advance beyond this line? What did the Caledonians do?

4. What was the result of the battle at Ardoch? What did Agricola's fleet discover?

5. When, and where, was Hadrian's Wall built? What was its purpose?

6. Describe the course of Antoninus' Wall.

7. What did Severus determine to do? Describe his progress northward. When, and where, did he die?

9. When are the Picts first mentioned? Where did they live?

10. Whence did the Scots come? What portion of Scotland did they occupy? With whom did they join? For what purpose?

11. How far south did they penetrate? Who defeated them?

12. Why could not the Romans protect the Britons? What did Honorius tell the Britons to do? What gave the Picts and Scots another opportunity of invading South Britain? Why did the Romans return? What did they try to do? When did they finally leave?

CHAPTER II.

FROM THE DEPARTURE OF THE ROMANS TO KENNETH MACALPIN, 420-843 A.D., 423 Years.

Death of St. Ninian,	432
Saxon immigration—Hengist and Horsa,	449
Foundation of the Scottish monarchy,	503
The Northumbrian kingdom formed,	547
Columba comes to Iona,	563
Arrival of St. Mungo,	590
Prince Edwin founds Edinburgh,	617
Battle of Moyra,	637
Battle of Nechtansmere or Dunnichen,	685
Dumbarton taken by Saxons and Picts,	756
Accession of Kenneth Macalpin,	836
Picts and Scots united under Kenneth,	843

1. The Saxons are said, in many histories, to have come over to Britain from Germany, for the first time, in 449, under two leaders called *Hengist* and *Horsa*. The Saxons, however, had for centuries before this come over the North Sea in considerable numbers and settled on the southern and eastern shores of Britain. Along with them came kindred tribes, known in history as *Jutes* and *Angles*. From the latter South Britain took its name of *England*, and the language spoken by all the tribes was called *English*. These Saxons, or *Anglo-Saxons* as they are also called, formed in Britain seven kingdoms called the *Heptarchy*. One of these, founded in 547, extended from the *Humber* to the *Forth*, and was named, from its position north of the Humber, *Northumbria*.

2. The country north of the *Forth* was then called *Pictland*, and was inhabited by the Picts. Between the Northumbrians and

the Picts there were many conflicts. **Edwin**, a prince of Northumbria, who began to reign in 617, built a stronghold on a rock overlooking the Forth, as a defence against his northern neighbours. This stronghold was called *Edwines-burgh*, and subsequently *Edin-burgh*. Edwin's successors, **Oswald** and **Osway**, are said to have taken tribute from the King of the Picts.

3. The next king, **Ecgfrid**, animated by a desire for conquest, crossed the Forth with a great army, which he led beyond the Tay to a place called *Dun-nechtan* or *Nechtans-mere*, which has been identified as Dunnichen in Forfarshire. There, in 685, a great battle was fought, in which the invaders were completely defeated and King Ecgfrid was slain. The Picts not only recovered their own territory north of the Forth, but drove their foes across the Tweed, and, for a time, made that river the northern boundary of Northumbria.

4. While this struggle went on during the sixth and seventh centuries between the Picts and the Saxons on the east coast of North Britain, two races farther west formed themselves into separate kingdoms. These were the Strathclyde Britons and the Scots. The Saxons, by occupying Yorkshire and Lancashire as well as Northumbria, had cut off the Romanised Britons who dwelt north of Hadrian's Wall from their brethren, the Southern Britons, who inhabited Wales. These isolated Northern Britons formed a small independent state called *Cumbria* or *Strathclyde*, whose capital was Dumbarton, and whose territory comprised the country lying northward between the Solway and the Firth of Clyde with part of the counties of Dumbarton and Stirling.

5. These Britons are believed to have had Christianity introduced among them by **St. Ninian**, who died in 432. He built a church for himself at Whithorn in Galloway, and preached the gospel there. The Britons seem to have relapsed into heathenism, from which they were not delivered till **St. Kentigern**, or **St. Mungo** as he is also called, came to them in 590, after the formation of their kingdom of Strathclyde, and took up his residence on the banks of the Molendinar Stream, where Glasgow Cathedral now stands.

6. The Strathclyde Britons were a feeble race. They with difficulty held their own against the Picts, the Saxons, and the Scots. The Picts and Scots, while often at war with each other, seem occasionally to have laid aside their enmity and to have made common cause against the Britons, for we find that a Saxon and Pictish army in 756 took Dumbarton after a siege of four months, and four years afterwards, burned the fortress to the ground.

7. The Scots had gradually come over from Ireland to Argyle, until they formed a colony there so considerable that some of the descendants of **Carber Rhiadha**, who had been a chief among the Scots of Ulster, thought it worth their while to seek their fortunes in the colony. They became governors over the people, who took the name of *Dalriads*. The first of these governors was **Loarn More**, whose name is still perpetuated in the district and marquisate of *Lorne*. He was the first king of the Scots in Scotland, and the year 503 is given as the first of his reign. Ireland had early been christianized by **St. Patrick**, who died in 460. It is, therefore, probable that the Dalriad Scots, when they came over to Argyle, were Christians, and consequently more refined and civilized than the Britons, who had relapsed into heathenism, and the Picts and Saxons, who had never heard the gospel.

8. The superiority which the Scots derived from their Christian civilization was doubtless further increased by the teaching of **St.**



The Cathedral and St. Oran's Chapel, Iona. Mull in the distance.

Colm or Columba, who, to escape from the civil strife raging in Ireland, sailed for Iona, in 563, and there founded the celebrated monastery which became a centre from which Christian missionaries were sent, not only over Scotland, but also to many parts of Europe.

9. The power and influence of the Dalriad Scots soon grew so *great that they wanted to rule supreme*, not only in their own terri-

tory, but also in Ireland. To accomplish their desire they collected a great army of Scots, Picts, Strathclyde Britons, and Saxons, and landed in Ireland in 637. They were met by **King Donnal** at Moyra, and completely defeated. The Scots were much weakened by this defeat. They soon recovered, however, and, for nearly two centuries we have obscure accounts of fighting among themselves, and of wars which they waged with the Picts and Britons, until, in 836, **Kenneth Macalpin** became their king. He soon after claimed the throne of the Picts, and, at length, in the year 843, succeeded in uniting both nations under his sway.

Summary.—The Saxons, Angles, and Jutes, whose aid the Britons had invoked, came over from Germany and Jutland in great numbers and formed seven kingdoms called the Heptarchy. From the Angles the country was named England, and its language English. One of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy extended from the Humber to the Forth, and was called Northumbria. The country north of the Forth was Pictland. Edwin, Prince of Northumbria, in 617 founded Edinburgh, which afterwards became the capital of Scotland. His successor, Ecgfrid, invaded Pictland in 685, and was defeated at Dunnichen, in Forfarshire, after which the Tweed became for a time the southern boundary of Pictland. The northern Britons formed the kingdom of Strathclyde between the Solway and Dumbartonshire. St. Ninian introduced Christianity among them, but they relapsed into heathenism until they were converted by St. Mungo in 590. The Scots from Ireland, who had long been settled in Argyle and the Isles, formed a kingdom there in 503 under Loarn More, who was the first king of the Scots in Scotland. The Scots were christianized before they came from Ireland, and their Christianity was more firmly established by St. Columba, who settled in Iona in 563. The Scots wanted to rule over Ireland, and invaded it in 637, but they were defeated in the battle of Moyra. There were frequent wars between them and the Picts, until, in 843 Kenneth Macalpin united the two nations.

QUESTIONS.

1. When did the Saxons come to Britain? Who were their leaders? Where had many of them settled before? What other tribes came with them? From which tribe did England take its name? How many kingdoms did the Anglo-Saxons found? What name is applied to these kingdoms?

2. What name was given to the country north of the Forth? Who founded Edinburgh? In what kingdom was it? Who took tribute from the Picts?

3. How did the Picts recover their territory? What additional territory did they acquire?

4. What two kingdoms were formed in the west of Scotland? How were

the Britons north of Hadrian's Wall cut off from the southern Britons? What was the capital of the northern Britons? What territory was included in the kingdom of Strathclyde?

5. Who introduced Christianity among the northern Britons? Where did he build his church? Who re-introduced Christianity? When? Where did he live?

6. When was Dumbarton taken? By whom?

7. Whence did the Scots come?

Where did they first settle? Who was the first governor? What district takes its name from him? In what year did he begin to reign? Who had introduced Christianity into Ireland? When did he die?

8. Who founded the monastery of Iona? Of what did it become a centre?

9. Who joined the Scots in the invasion of Ireland? What was the result? Who united the Picts and the Scots? When?

CHAPTER III.

FROM KENNETH MACALPIN TO MACBETH, 843-1056 A.D., 213 Years.

Death of Kenneth Macalpin,	859
Battle of Brunanburgh,	937
Cumberland given to Malcolm, King of Scots,	945
Battle of Luncarty,	974
Battle of Carham—The Tweed made the southern boundary of Scotland,	1018
Death of King Duncan,	1039
Macbeth slain in Strathbogie,	1056

1. Though Kenneth Macalpin united the Picts and the Scots so completely as to make of them *one* Scottish nation, his sway was confined to the country north of the Firths of Forth and Clyde. It was more than a century after his time before the whole country north of the Tweed and the Cheviots was generally called Scotland. The Lothians still formed part of the kingdom of Northumbria, and Strathclyde was an independent state with kings of its own.

2. Shortly after the death of Kenneth, in 859, the **Norsemen** or Northmen, from Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, began to make frequent invasions and settlements on the eastern coasts. They came from regions bordering on the old homes of the Angles and Saxons, who had settled in Northumbria. They were of a kindred race with the Anglo-Saxons, and spoke a dialect of the same language. They were called in their own days *Vikings* or *Baymen*, because they issued forth on their piratical expeditions from the Viks or bays of the Scandinavian peninsula; but in later histories they are generally called *Danes*. Though they came to plunder, they often remained in the country, and doubtless contributed

largely to form the population of the eastern and northern Lowlands.

3. With these warlike invaders the successors of Kenneth Macalpin had many a struggle. In a conflict with them near the Firth of Forth, **Constantine**, the son of Kenneth, was killed. A later king, **Grig** or **Gregory**, drove them out of the country. They soon came back, however, for we are told that the next king, **Donald IV.**, was killed in battle with the Danes somewhere between the Firths of Forth and Tay. But on one occasion, another **Constantine**, King of Scots, formed an alliance with the Danes and the Strathclyde Britons against **Athelstane of England**. These allies were defeated in the year **937**, in the great battle of **Brunanburgh**, where there was such slaughter "as had not before been witnessed since the Saxons landed in England."

4. In **945** the Scots and English seem to have laid aside their hostility, for, in that year, **Edmund of England** having harried Cumberland, gave it to **Malcolm I.**, King of Scots, "on condition that he should be his co-operator both on sea and land." It does not appear that Malcolm could co-operate effectively with the King of England, for he had much trouble with the Norsemen within his own dominions. A colony of them, ruled over by a chief called the **Maormor of Moray**, sent a hostile army southward against Malcolm. He met them in battle at **Fetteresso** in the Mearns, where he was killed.

5. The Danes or Norsemen continued for some time to harass the Scots under Malcolm's successors. Though the stories of great victories gained over them by **Kenneth III.** at **Luncarty** in **974**, and by **Malcolm II.** at **Mortlach** in **1010**, are fabulous, it appears that soon after Malcolm's reign they ceased their attacks on the mainland, and those of them who had settled in the country became in some degree amalgamated with the Scots, and were nominally at least subject to the Scottish kings.

6. **Malcolm II.** invaded Northumbria, and, though beaten at first, he made a second effort in **1018** and gained a victory at **Carham**, which secured for Scotland the **Tweed** as its southern boundary. The last King of Strathclyde fought on Malcolm's side in this battle, and that state soon afterwards became part of the Scottish kingdom. From this time forward the **Tweed**, the **Cheriot Hills**, and the **Solway** have been generally recognized as marking the southern borders of Scotland.

7. **Malcolm II.** was succeeded by his grandson **Duncan**. He tried

in the south to extend his kingdom into Northumberland, but without success; and in the north he endeavoured to bring into more complete subjection the holders of the northern states. He was slain in 1039 by **Macbeth**, the Maormor of Ross and Moray, at Bothgowan near Elgin.

8. Macbeth's wife was Gruach, a granddaughter of Kenneth IV. Macbeth, being ruler of Scotland along the Moray Firth and north of Loch Ness, and connected with the royal family by marriage, had no difficulty in seating himself on the Scottish throne. At the death of King Duncan his two young sons, **Malcolm** and **Donald Bane**, fled for refuge to their uncle **Seward**, Earl of Northumberland. From him, when they grew to man's estate, they got an army, at the head of which they marched northwards, with the purpose of recovering for Malcolm his father's throne. At the famed *Dunsinane* a battle was fought, which was not conclusive, but the war was carried northwards, and at Lumphanan, in Aberdeenshire, Macbeth was killed.

9. He had reigned wisely and vigorously for 17 years, and under his rule the country had been quiet and prosperous. **Lulach**, a son of Queen Gruach by a former marriage, carried on the contest with Malcolm for a little longer, but he was slain in Strathbogie in 1056, and Malcolm, the son of Duncan, became king.

10. The **Macbeth** and **Lady Macbeth** of the old chronicles have been so vividly realized to us by the genius of Shakespeare, that we can scarcely regard them as fabulous; but they have little in common with the King Macbeth and the Queen Gruach of history.

Summary.—Kenneth Macalpin's kingdom did not extend south of the Forth and Clyde. After his death in 859, the Norsemen or Danes, who were also called Vikings or Baysmen, often came to plunder the eastern coasts, but sometimes they settled there. The Scots fought many battles with them; but on one occasion King Constantine formed an alliance with them and the Strathclyde Britons against Athelstane of England. He defeated these allies at Brunanburgh in 937. Edmund of England in 945 ceded Cumberland to King Malcolm. The Scottish king had great trouble with the Norsemen of Moray, by whom he was killed in a battle at Fetteresso. Malcolm's successors had many a struggle with the Norsemen, but gradually reduced them under their authority. Malcolm II., by his victory over the English at Carham in 1018, made the Tweed, the Cheviots, and the Solway the southern boundary of Scotland. Duncan, grandson of Malcolm II., endeavoured to carry out more

fully the work of his grandfather ; but he was killed by Macbeth in 1039. Duncan's sons, Malcolm and Donald Bane, fled to England and Macbeth became king. They got help from Seward, Earl of Northumberland ; invaded Scotland, and defeated and slew Macbeth after he had reigned 17 years. Malcolm then became king.

QUESTIONS.

1. Over what district did Kenneth Macalpin rule? What was the boundary of Scotland a century later? To what kingdom did the Lothians belong?

2. Who made settlements on the east coast after the death of Kenneth? Whence did they come? With what race were they connected? Why were they called Vikings? What are they called in later histories?

3. Name two kings of the Scots killed in battle with the Danes. With whom did Constantine ally himself? For what purpose? What battle was fought? What was the result?

4. How did Malcolm get possession of Cumberland? On what condition? How was Malcolm unable to do this? What became of Malcolm?

5. What battle is Kenneth III. said to have won? Over whom? When

did the Danes cease from their attacks on the mainland?

6. Who gained the battle of Carham? What was secured by it? Who fought on Malcolm II.'s side in this battle? What now became the southern boundary of Scotland?

7. Who succeeded Malcolm II.? What did he try to do? With what success? By whom was he slain? Where?

8. What circumstances assisted Macbeth to become King of Scotland? Who was Macbeth's wife? What became of Duncan's two sons? How did they recover the throne of Scotland? What battles were fought? Where was Macbeth killed?

9. Who then carried on the war? With what result? Who became king?

10. What poet has made Mac famous?

CHAPTER IV.

MALCOLM III. (Canmore), 1057-1093 A.D., 36 Years.

Accession of Malcolm III.,	1057
Norman Conquest—Battle of Hastings,	1066
Edgar the Atheling took refuge in Scotland,	1068
Death of William the Conqueror,	1087
Malcolm slain at Alnwick,	1093
Death of Queen Margaret,	1093

1. Malcolm III., surnamed **Canmore** or *Greathead*, was crowned at Scone on the 25th of April, 1057. Nine years after, in 1066, William the Conqueror defeated Harold, the last of the Saxon kings at Hastings, and made himself master of England. This Conquest of England by the Normans soon exercised a mighty and abiding influence on Scotland. The Normans were of the same race as the Anglo-Saxons, and the Norsemen or Danes. They had landed in

the north of France under a leader called **Rollo** or **Rolf** in **867**, and, by force and policy, soon acquired possession of a fine territory, which was called *Normandy*, the province of the Northmen. In language and manners they soon became Frenchmen. This union of Northern vigour and French civilization produced a race fitted to rule wherever they established themselves. A kind of government had been formed among the Normans which is known as the *Feudal System*.

2. By the feudal system the king was held to be the supreme lord of the land. With this land the king rewarded his followers for military service, which they were afterwards bound to render to him with a force proportioned to the extent of their tenure. The possessions so held of the king were called *fiefs*, and the possessors became the *vassals* of the king, who was then their *Feudal-lord*, *Suzerain*, or *Lord Paramount*. The great vassals again parcelled out their estates to retainers, to whom they, in their turn, were feudal-lords. The vassals received their fiefs from the feudal-lord by investiture, when they took an oath of fealty or fidelity, and did homage or became his man (*homme*) for the fief. The introduction of this system into Scotland after the Norman Conquest was slow, but steady and effective; and it left even stronger historical traces on Scotland than on England.

3. Immediately after the *Conquest* there was a large migration of Saxons northwards. In the south and east of Scotland they found a kindred English speaking race, with whom they readily mingled, and whose power and influence they greatly increased.

4. In **1068** there came to Scotland as refugees **Edgar Atheling**, the heir of the Saxon kings, his mother, his two sisters, **Clementina** and **Margaret**, and many retainers. King Malcolm kindly gave the exiles refuge and hospitality, and married the Princess **Margaret**. It was natural, after this, that **Malcolm** should defend the Saxons, and oppose the Conqueror.

5. At the time of the *Conquest* the territory lying between the Humber and the Tweed had not been annexed to either Scotland or England. The Conqueror tried to master it by building a castle at York, another on the Tyne, called Newcastle, and a third at Carlisle; and gave the charge of the district to Robert Comyn, one of his fighting followers, whom he had made Earl of Northumberland. Him his new subjects killed at Durham.

6. **Edgar Atheling** made a feeble attempt upon York, but **William** soon forced him to seek the protection of his brother-in-law.

York Castle, however, was soon after taken and demolished by three sons of Sweyn, King of Denmark, who sailed up the Humber with a fleet of 240 ships. They were assisted by Edgar and Gospatrick of Northumbria. After this, Malcolm, thinking the time favourable, poured a host into Cumberland, but Gospatrick, who had hitherto been his ally, changed sides and attacked him. Malcolm then harried Northumberland, and drove so many of the inhabitants northwards, that, according to Simeon of Durham, one of the English chroniclers, they were afterwards found as thralls or slaves in every village, and even every hut, north of the Border.

7. The Conqueror in his turn swept the district in order that, as he could not keep it to himself, he might make an uninhabited desert between him and so dangerous a neighbour as the King of Scots. William led his force to the Scottish border, but "they found naught for which they were the better." Malcolm is said to have made peace with William, and to have become his *man*, but it does not appear that Malcolm regarded himself as William's vassal, for in 1079 and 1080 he again made raids as far as the Tyne, which were followed by an invasion of Scotland under the Conqueror's son Robert. Ten years of peace followed, in which Malcolm advised his brother-in-law, Edgar, to come to terms with the Conqueror.

8. The Conqueror died in 1067, and Malcolm had then to deal with his son William Rufus, who became King of England, while his elder brother, Robert, had to be content with the Dukedom of Normandy. Edgar Atheling had been invested with some lordships in Normandy by Duke Robert, which the latter, for the sake of peace, made over to Rufus. Edgar again sought the protection of his brother-in-law. Malcolm forthwith invaded England and "harried a great deal of it." When Rufus heard of this he hastened from Normandy, and called out both a land and a sea force against Malcolm. The ships were lost. Malcolm, instead of avoiding Rufus, went out of Scotland into the district of Leeds, in England, and there awaited him. By the intervention of Duke Robert and Edgar a reconciliation was made. Malcolm became his *man*, that is, did homage for the lands he claimed and held south of the Border. This happened in 1091.

9. Malcolm soon after complained that Rufus, instead of securing to him the territories which he claimed beyond the Border, was strengthening and garrisoning Carlisle Castle against him. When Malcolm, in an interview with the English king at Gloucester, could get no satisfaction, he returned to Scotland, raised an army, marched

into England, and was harrying it when he was ensnared by **Robert, Earl of Northumberland**, near Alnwick, and slain. His two sons, Edward and Edgar, had accompanied him on this expedition. The former was slain along with his father, the latter escaped and carried the tidings to Edinburgh to his mother, who was so affected when she heard of her bereavement, that she died (1093).

10. In Malcolm's reign of 36 years Scotland grew in strength and civilization. Malcolm was a man of strife, but his circumstances and his age made him so. That there was something chivalrous in his nature is proved by the generous manner in which he treated his brother-in-law and the other English exiles. That he had great military talents, and knew how to call forth the strength of his kingdom, is evidenced by the way in which he coped with the conqueror of England. Margaret, his queen, was a refined and pious woman. She did much to civilize him and his court, and was the means of obtaining for him much of the deference that made him so powerful. So highly did the church of that day esteem her, that she was canonized as a saint.

Summary.—Malcolm Canmore was crowned in 1057. The Norman Conquest of England, in 1066, exercised a great influence on Scotland. The feudal system which the Normans established was gradually introduced into Scotland. The conquest drove many Anglo-Saxons into the northern kingdom, and among them the Saxon prince, Edgar Atheling, and his sister Margaret. Malcolm married the princess, and thus became hostile to William the Conqueror. There was a contest between the two kings for the territory between the Humber and the Tweed. William built forts at York, Newcastle, and Carlisle, but was unable to hold them. Malcolm harried Northumberland and carried off its inhabitants. William, in his turn, laid waste the district, in order that he might have a desert between him and the King of Scots. The Conqueror died in 1067, but the contest was carried on by his son William Rufus, until peace was made by Malcolm's agreeing to do homage for the lands he claimed south of the Border. Malcolm, finding that Rufus withheld from him the territory for which he had promised homage, again invaded England, was led into an ambush, and slain at Alnwick in 1093. Queen Margaret died of grief when she heard of his death.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What surname did Malcolm III. get? What does it mean? Where was he crowned? When? Who was | the last of the Saxon kings of England? Who defeated him? When? Where? What is this event called? |
|--|---|

Of what race were the Normans? Where had they settled? When? Under whom? What was the effect of French civilization added to northern vigour? What kind of government was formed by the Normans?

2. What position did the feudal system give the king? Among whom did he divide the land? What were they bound to do for their lands? What were these lands called? What were the holders of the lands called? What was the king called? What did the great vassals do with their lands? What had the retainers to do for the lands thus held? When was the feudal system introduced into Scotland?

3. What migration took place immediately after the conquest? What was the effect of this migration?

4. Where did Edgar find refuge? Who came with him? Whom did Malcolm marry?

5. What portion of the country was annexed neither to England nor to Scotland? What did the Conqueror do in order to master it? To whom did he give the charge of it? What became of him?

6. Who captured York Castle? Who assisted them? What did Malcolm do after this? Who opposed him? What did Malcolm then do? What did he do with the inhabitants?

7. What did the Conqueror do? Why did the Conqueror not continue his invasion of Scotland? When did Malcolm renew his raids? Who in turn led an army into Scotland? What followed? What advice did Malcolm give his brother-in-law Edgar?

8. When did the Conqueror die? How were the Conqueror's possessions divided? What had Edgar received from Duke Robert? What did he find it necessary to do with it? Why? What did Edgar then do? What did Malcolm do? Where was Rufus when he heard of this? What did he do? What became of his fleet? How far south did Malcolm proceed? Who became peacemakers? For what did Malcolm do homage to William? When?

9. What did Malcolm soon after complain of? Where had he an interview with Rufus? Not getting satisfaction, what did he do? What was the result? What effect had the tidings upon the queen?

10. How long did Malcolm reign? In what respects did Scotland improve during his reign? What made Malcolm a man of strife? How had he treated the Saxon exiles? What shows his military skill? What effect had his marriage upon him and the country? What shows that she was esteemed by the Church?

CHAPTER V.

DONALD BANE TO DAVID I., 1093-1153 A.D., 60 Years.

Accession of Donald Bane,	1093
Duncan drives out Donald Bane and seizes the throne,	1094
Donald Bane restored,	1095
Donald Bane deposed—Edgar placed on the throne,	1097
Matilda married to Henry I.,	1100
Death of Edgar and Accession of Alexander I.,	1107
Rebellion of the Maormors of Ross and Mearns,	1120
Death of Alexander I.—Accession of David I.,	1124
David I. and Stephen swear to maintain the right of Maud to the crown of England,	1127
David invades England,	1135
Battle of the Standard,	1138
Treaty of Durham,	1139
Prince Henry dies,	1152
Death of David I.,	1153

1. Malcolm Canmore was succeeded by his brother **Donald Bane**, who had reigned for only a few months when, in **1094**, **Duncan**, an illegitimate son of Malcolm, returned from England, where he had been a hostage, drove out Donald Bane, and placed himself on the throne. In little more than a year Duncan was murdered and Donald Bane restored.

2. In **1097** Edgar Atheling managed, by the aid of an English force, to depose Donald Bane, and place his nephew **Edgar**, the son of Malcolm Canmore, on the throne. Edgar reigned peacefully for eight years. One important event distinguished his reign. On the death of Malcolm and Margaret in **1093**, and the usurpation of the throne by Donald Bane, their daughter **Matilda** was sent to England, and placed under the care of her aunt Clementina, who had taken the veil in **1086**, and had become abbess of Wilton. While Matilda was living in quiet seclusion at Wilton Abbey in **1100**, Henry I., who, in the same year, had become King of England on the death of his brother Rufus, sent her a proposal of marriage, which she accepted, and on the 15th day of November he married her. By this marriage of the Conqueror's son with Matilda, who was the Atheling's niece and the sister of the King of Scotland, the *Norman and Saxon royal lines were united*. Edgar died in **1107**, and was succeeded by his brother **Alexander**.

3. When **Alexander I.** came to the throne in **1107**, he, in accordance with a request or injunction of his brother Edgar, intrusted the government of Cumberland to his younger brother David. This prevented the Scottish king from seeking to push his dominions southward, as he could only do so by encroaching on his brother's territory. Alexander took an active part in changing the *Culdee* forms of religious worship for those of Rome, and erected at St. Andrews, where there had long been a fraternity of Culdees, a bishopric, adjusted with great exactness to the Catholic system that now prevailed in the rest of Europe. The Bishop of York presided at the consecration of **Turgot**, the first bishop of the new diocese, but the king refused to admit any claim of supremacy on the part of York over the see of St. Andrews.

4. In **1120** the Maormor of Ross, assisted by the Maormor of the Mearns, led an army southward against the king, and attacked him at his royal residence at Invergowrie, but he escaped and gathered an army, with which he defeated his enemies and drove them across the Moray Firth. King Alexander died at Stirling in **1124**, and was succeeded by his younger brother **David**.

5. David, sixteen years before his accession, had married Matilda, the heiress of the Earl of Northumberland, and acquired the *Earldom of Huntingdon*, perhaps as a marriage portion, but more probably as compensation for Northumberland itself; for it may not have



Stirling Castle.

been thought desirable that a prince, who ruled in Cumbria, and was likely to become King of Scotland, should also have authority over the territory between the Tweed and the Humber. Be this as it may, David, since 1108, had been Earl of Huntingdon, and from that time till his accession to the Scottish throne in 1124 had lived chiefly at the English court as a wealthy and powerful English nobleman. His residence at the court where his sister Matilda was queen, and his intercourse with the Norman nobility, doubtless exercised a great influence in refining his manners and forming his character.

6. Immediately after David's accession, while he still lingered in England, the Maormor of Ross and Moray made a hostile march southward as far as Stracathro, in Forfarshire, but the Moray men were there defeated by the Constable of Scotland, and driven

back to their own territory, where they were so hard pressed that they gave up their chief, whom David kept under restraint as a vanquished man. The king subjected his territories to feudal forfeiture, and portioned them out to Norman and other nobles, who were to hold them as crown vassals. In this manner did the Scottish king employ the feudal system to strengthen the power of the crown in the far north; and thus it came about that Norman adventurers became heads of great Highland families, and the chiefs of Celtic clans.

7. David's sister, Matilda, bore two children to Henry I. of England—**William**, who was drowned off the coast of France in 1120, a loss which so affected King Henry that "he never smiled again;" and **Maud**, who was married first to the Emperor of Germany, and subsequently to Geoffrey Plantagenet, son of the Earl of Anjou, by whom she had a son, who afterwards became **Henry II.** of England. Henry was desirous that his daughter Maud should become queen after his death; and, in 1127, he made her uncle, David of Scotland, and his own nephew Stephen, and others nearest the throne, swear to maintain her right to the crown of England. Stephen, however, regarded not his oath, but seized the crown himself when Henry died, and David took up arms in behalf of his niece.

8. Though Maud was the rightful heir to the crown, the Norman nobles doubtless preferred to have as their ruler a bold man like Stephen, who was the grandson of the Conqueror, rather than a woman who was the granddaughter of a Saxon princess. As Stephen owed his crown to the Norman nobles, he dared not attempt to curb their power with so firm a hand as his predecessors had done. They accordingly built for themselves all over England strong castles which became centres of cruelty and oppression to the Saxon people, many of whom took refuge in Scotland, where their tales of Norman tyranny and oppression were heard with pity, and with dread lest such a fate should come upon themselves. But though many Normans settled in Scotland and acquired great influence there, *it does not appear that a Norman castle was ever built in Scotland.*

9. Even before the reign of Stephen the Scottish people felt that the Norman power was pressing too close upon their borders, and when David, at the time of Stephen's coronation in 1135, took up arms in the cause of his niece, he had no difficulty in raising an army to fight against the hated Normans. Though the Scots on that occasion marched into England nearly up to the gates of Durham, they were welcomed by the people as protectors rather than opposed

as enemies. Stephen came against the King of Scots with a large army, but thought it more prudent to appease him by concessions than oppose him in battle. The English fiefs, with additions, were conferred on Henry, the son of David, and the Scottish claim to Northumberland was left an open question.

10. But the hatred of the Scottish people to the aggressive Normans continued to grow intensely, and David took advantage of it in 1138 to strike another blow in behalf of his niece. From all parts of Scotland there assembled round the king an immense but motley army eager to be led across the Border. There were wild Picts from Galloway armed with pikes, Norsemen from Orkney and the Isles with their battle-axes, Highlanders with their swords and shields, men of Lothian, Cumbrians, and men of Teviotdale with cuirasses and long spears. David led this army into England, where they pillaged and laid waste the country, until they were met at *Northallerton* by *Turstan*, Archbishop of York, and the Norman barons of his diocese. The Normans set up a wagon bearing a tall mast, from which were hung relics and sacred banners, and above all the consecrated host. Round this *standard* they withstood charge after charge of their undisciplined foes, until a report spread that the King of Scots was killed, when the attacks became more feeble, and were avenged with great slaughter.

11. Though David was defeated in the "*Battle of the Standard*," he withdrew from it as a baffled, rather than as a beaten general, kept the remains of his unwieldy army on the English side of the Border, and set them to besiege Wark Castle. Stephen, harassed by other difficulties, was glad to make peace with David, which was concluded by the Treaty of Durham in 1139, when he gave to Prince Henry all Northumbria, except the fortresses of Newcastle and Durham.

12. The remainder of David's reign was peaceful. His son Henry died in 1152, leaving three sons, Malcolm, William, and David. The king himself died in Carlisle Castle in 1153. He was a pious prince, and during his reign of twenty-nine years he endeavoured to carry out the ecclesiastical changes that his mother Margaret had begun. While yet Prince of Cumbria he founded the Bishopric of Glasgow, and when he became king he established the bishoprics of Dunkeld, Moray, Aberdeen, Ross, Caithness, Brechin, Dunblane, and Galloway, and founded the abbeys of Holyrood, Melrose, Kelso, Jedburgh, Newcastle, and Kinross. David's liberality to the Church at the expense of the royal revenues, made James I. say of him that "*He was ane sair sanct for the crown.*"

Summary.—Donald Bane succeeded Malcolm Canmore in 1093, was dethroned by Duncan in 1094, restored in 1095, and finally deposed and succeeded by Edgar, the son of Malcolm, in 1097. Edgar's sister, Matilda, took refuge in England during the troubles that followed her father's death, and was married by Henry I. Thus were the Norman, Scottish, and Saxon royal lines united. Edgar was succeeded in 1107 by his brother Alexander I., who changed the Culdee forms of worship for those of Rome, and made St. Andrews a bishopric. After driving the rebel Maormor of Ross across the Moray Firth, he reigned in peace till his death in 1124, when he was succeeded by his younger brother David. At the age of sixteen Prince David had married the Earl of Northumberland's daughter, and through her acquired the Earldom of Huntingdon. He consequently, until his accession to the throne, lived among the Norman nobility of England, and became like them in manners and character. After his accession he defeated the Maormor of Ross and Moray at Stracathro, in Forfarshire, and gave his lands to be held under feudal tenure to Norman and other nobles, who thus became chiefs of Highland clans. Matilda bore two children, William and Maud, to Henry I. of England. William was drowned, and Maud married first the Emperor of Germany, and then Geoffrey Plantagenet. Henry I. made his nobles swear to let his daughter succeed him; but Stephen, a grandson of the Conqueror, broke his oath and usurped the throne. David espoused the cause of his niece, and led armies into England in 1135, and again in 1138. The latter invasion was opposed by the Archbishop of York and the Norman barons, who defeated David in the battle of the Standard. Stephen made peace with the Scottish king in 1139. David spent the remainder of his reign in founding bishoprics and abbeys. He died at Carlisle in 1153.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded Malcolm? How long did he reign? Who deposed him? How long did he reign? What became of him? Who succeeded him?

2. How was Donald Bane again deposed? Who then became king? What was the character of his reign? How long did he reign? Where had Matilda been sent? Under whose care had she been placed? By whom was she married? What royal lines were thus united? When did Edgar die? By whom was he succeeded?

3. To whom was the government of Cumberland intrusted? What did

this prevent Alexander from doing? What bishopric did Alexander erect? What had been there before? Who presided at the consecration? What did the king refuse to admit?

4. Who attacked the king at Invergowrie? With what result? What did he do? Where did he die? When? Who succeeded?

5. Whom had David married? What earldom had he acquired? Where had he lived? What effect had this on David?

6. What disturbance took place in the north on David's accession? Who

suppressed it? What did David do with the chief? What did he do with the forfeited lands? For what purpose did the king thus employ the feudal system?

7. How many children had David's sister Matilda? What became of her son William? What effect had this on Henry I.? To whom was Maud first married? To whom afterwards? Who was their son? Whom did Henry I. wish to be his successor? Who swore to maintain her claim? Who seized the crown on Henry's death? Whom did David support?

8. Why did the Norman barons not support Maud? What effect had this on the conduct of Stephen? How did the barons act?

9. How was the Scottish army received in the north of England? How far did David march into England? What concessions did Stephen make to David?

10. When did David strike another blow for his niece? Where was he met? Who led the English? What standard had they?

11. What was the result of the battle? What is this battle generally called? What castle did David afterwards besiege? What treaty ended the war? What did Stephen give to Prince Henry?

12. Where did David die? When? What was his character? What bishoprics did he establish? What abbies did he found? What did James I. say of him? Why?

CHAPTER VI.

MALCOLM IV. to ALEXANDER II., 1153-1249 A.D., 96 Years.

Accession of Malcolm IV.,	1153
Malcolm gives up his claim to Northumberland, ..	1157
Somerled of the Isles defeated and slain,	1164
Death of Malcolm IV.—Accession of William the Lion,	1165
William the Lion taken prisoner—Treaty of Falaise, ..	1174
Independence of Scotland restored by Richard I., ..	1189
Death of William the Lion—Accession of Alexander II.,	1214
Attempts to settle the border line between the two countries,	1222
Death of Alexander II.,	1249

1. David I. was succeeded by his grandson, **Malcolm**, the eldest of the three sons of Prince Henry, who died in **1152**. Malcolm IV. was but twelve years old when he became king. His reign of twelve years was disturbed by **Somerled**, the chief of Argyle and the Isles, who twice rose in revolt against the king's authority; but Somerled was defeated and slain at Renfrew in **1164**.

2. Malcolm's cousin, Henry, son of the Empress Maud, had become King of England on the death of Stephen in **1154**. To him, Malcolm in **1157** gave up all claim to Northumberland and to Cumbria south of the Solway. Henry II. on his part solemnly reinvested Malcolm with the Earldom of Huntingdon. The Scottish king had a personal affection for his royal cousin, whom he followed in his continental wars. Malcolm died at Jedburgh in **1185**, and was

succeeded by his younger brother, **William**, who, because he was the first king of Scotland that had a lion rampant for his arms, was called *William the Lion*.

3. William the Lion, in the early years of his reign, followed his cousin Henry in his foreign wars, as his brother Malcolm had done. William, however, does not appear to have been content with the agreement by which his brother had resigned the claim of the Scottish kings to Northumberland; for after enjoying the friendship of Henry for nine years, he demanded the restitution of that province and was refused. In an evil hour for himself and for Scotland he resolved to recover Northumberland by force of arms. In 1174 he led an army across the Border, and began to pillage and devastate the country. The Yorkshire barons, to the number of 400 men, all mounted in full armour, resolved to oppose the invaders. On the 12th of July they made a night march from Newcastle northwards, and next morning saw, through the mist, the towers of Alnwick, and, tilting in a meadow near by, a small party of knights. One of these knights, either mistaking the barons for friends or rashly eager to oppose their advance, galloped forward and was unhorsed and taken. The Yorkshire barons to their amazement found that they had captured the King of Scots. They took him to Northampton, whence, for the greater security of so important a prisoner, Henry had him conveyed to Falaise Castle in Normandy.

4. William having been taken while trying to wrench from Henry a part of his dominion, had no reason to expect generous treatment from his cousin, and Henry resolved to profit as much as possible by the good fortune which had given him such a captive. Henry accordingly demanded as the ransom of William, that he should acknowledge the complete feudal superiority of England over Scotland, and should do *homage* to the King of England for the whole of Scotland in as absolute and complete a manner as the kings of Scotland had ever done for estates which they had held from the crown of England. William agreed to Henry's terms, and by the *Treaty of Falaise* in 1174, bound himself and his heirs to hold the crown of Scotland as vassals of England. As a security that the treaty would be kept, Henry required that Stirling, Edinburgh, Berwick, Jedburgh, and Roxburgh should be garrisoned by English soldiers, and that they should be maintained at William's expense. When these strongholds were occupied by English troops, William was allowed to return home, and twenty Scottish nobles were retained as hostages for his fidelity.

5. This subjection of Scotland to England lasted till 1189, when Henry died and Richard the Lion-hearted ascended the English throne. There was at this time a great movement in Christendom for the deliverance of the Holy Land, and particularly of Jerusalem from the Mahomedans. The expeditions undertaken by the nations of Europe were called *Crusades*. Richard was desirous of joining the Crusaders, and was in want of money for that purpose. Knowing that the chances of peace for England in his absence would be greater if he made the Scots his friends by an act of generosity, than if he left them smarting under a sense of the degrading subjection imposed upon them by his father, he annulled, for the sum of 10,000 marks, the conditions extorted from William by the treaty of Falaise.

6. After thus recovering the independence of his country, William the Lion reigned peacefully till his death, which took place in Stirling Castle in 1214. In 1211 William had made the barons swear fealty to his son, **Alexander**, who now succeeded him. The reign of William the Lion, from 1165 to 1214, is the longest in the annals of Scotland.

7. Alexander II., when he came to the throne in 1214, favoured the English barons in their resistance to the tyranny of King John, whom they compelled to sign *Magna Charta* in 1215. In return for his promised aid, they professed to put him in possession of Northumberland and Cumberland. Alexander entered those districts with an army, and during the years 1216 and 1217 there was much fighting and devastation on both sides of the Border, but in 1217 peace was concluded and afterwards confirmed by the marriage of the Scottish king to Joanna, sister of Henry III., who had succeeded King John in 1216. It does not appear that after this the Scottish kings made any strenuous efforts to annex the English border counties to Scotland.

8. In 1222 an effort was made by a joint commission to measure off the exact line of division between the two kingdoms. The commissioners could not come to a precise agreement, but the boundary line which was then attempted to be fixed is nearly the same as that laid down in the *Ordnance Survey* made a few years ago.

9. Alexander made a demand on Henry III. in 1237 for the restoration to him of the border counties, when the English king offered him instead certain manors in Northumberland and Cumberland, not in sovereignty, but in feudal property, which he accepted. As the Earldom of Huntingdon had gone to the descendants of

David, William the Lion's brother, the Scottish kings had no estates in England for which they owed homage. The English king would therefore the more readily give these border estates to Alexander, that he might still hold the King of Scots bound on their account to do him feudal service.

10. War was threatened between the two countries in 1244. The causes of this interruption of concord have not been clearly ascertained, but it is certain that two great armies met in hostile array on the Border. They deemed it prudent, however, to refrain from fighting, and peace was established by *the Treaty of Newcastle*, in which there is no mention whatever of homage; but each engaged not to abet the enemies of the other, and not to make war on each other's territories except on just provocation.

11. Alexander II. was desirous of establishing his authority over the western islands and the northern districts, where local chiefs either acted as independent rulers, or professed to hold of the King of Norway. He boasted that he would plant his standard on the cliffs of Thurso, but first resolved to subdue **Angus of Argyle and the Isles**. He accordingly in 1249 went on an expedition against that formidable chieftain, and reached the island of Kerrera in the Sound of Mull, opposite the Bay of Oban, where he died of fever.

Summary.—David I. was succeeded in 1153 by his grandson, Malcolm IV., a boy of twelve years. His reign was disturbed by the revolt of Somerled of the Isles, who was defeated and slain at Renfrew in 1164. To his cousin Henry II. he gave up Northumberland and Cumberland, and in return had secured to him the Earldom of Huntingdon. Malcolm IV. died at Jedburgh and was succeeded by his brother, William the Lion. After living on good terms with Henry II. for nine years, he became sorry that his brother had given up Northumberland, and resolved to recover it by force. He led an army into England, was taken captive near Alnwick, and for security was conveyed to Falaise Castle in France, where he was kept a prisoner until he agreed that he and his successors should hold the crown of Scotland as vassals of England. The independence of Scotland was restored by Richard the Lion-heart when he set out for the Holy Land in 1189. William died at Stirling in 1214, and was succeeded by his son, Alexander II. In the beginning of his reign there was fighting on the borders, but peace was made and Alexander married Joanna the sister of Henry III. The border line between the two countries was then laid down nearly as it is on our modern maps. Alexander, desiring to establish his

authority over the Western Isles, led an expedition against Angus of Argyile. He reached the island of Kerrera, where he died of fever in 1249.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded David I.? How old was he? What was his claim to the throne? Who disturbed his reign? What became of Somerled?

2. When did Henry II. become King of England? What claim did Malcolm give up to Henry II.? What did Henry II. on his part do? Where did Malcolm die? When? By whom was he succeeded? What name did he receive? Why?

3. What did William demand from Henry II.? With what result? What did William then do? Who opposed William? Tell how William was made prisoner. Where was he carried?

4. What did Henry demand as his ransom? To what did William bind himself and his heirs? What is this treaty called? What security did Henry demand?

5. How long did this subjection of Scotland last? Who succeeded Henry II.? What was he desirous of doing? What did he do to get money from the Scots?

6. Where, and when, did William

die? Who succeeded him? How long did William reign?

7. Whom did Alexander II. favour? Who was then King of England? What was he compelled to sign? When? What did the English barons promise Alexander II. in return? When did Alexander II. try to get possession of Northumberland and Cumberland? When was peace concluded? By what was it confirmed?

8. When was an effort made to define the boundary between Scotland and England? What was the result?

9. What demand did Alexander make on Henry III.? What did the English king offer instead? What object had Henry in view in giving these estates to Alexander?

10. When was war threatened between the two countries? By what was peace established? What agreement was entered into?

11. Where was Alexander anxious to establish his authority? Why? What boast did he make? What expedition did he undertake? Where and when did he die? What was the cause of his death?

CHAPTER VII.

ALEXANDER III., 1249-1286 A.D., 37 Years.

Accession of Alexander III.,	..	..	..	..	..	1249
Birth of the Princess Margaret,	..	..	..	..	..	1260
Battle of Largs, .. .. .	..	..	..	..	..	1263
The Isles given up by Norway to Scotland,	..	..	..	..	..	1266
The Princess Margaret married to Eric of Norway,	..	..	..	..	..	1281
Death of Prince Alexander,	..	..	..	..	..	1283
The King marries Joleta, ..	..	..	..	..	..	1285
Death of Alexander III., ..	..	..	..	..	..	1286

1. **Alexander III.** was not quite eight years old when he succeeded his father in 1249. His mother, Mary de Coucy, whom his father had married after the death of his first wife, Joan of England, in 1239, was a woman of strong will and high spirit, under whose guidance

the boy king was enabled to surmount the difficulties and avoid the dangers that surrounded him in the early years of his reign. The



Coronation Chair, Westminster Abbey, containing the Stone on which the Scottish Kings were crowned at Scone.

young king was crowned with great pomp at Scone on the *Stone of Destiny*. The Dalriad Scots had brought this stone from Ireland to Iona, and thence to Scone. The kings of Scots had always been placed on it when they were crowned, and at a later period Edward I. thought it of so great importance that he had it removed to Westminster Abbey, where it is preserved. When the sovereigns of Great Britain are crowned their throne is still placed upon it. The importance attached to this stone probably arose from an old prophecy connected with it, to the effect that:—

Unless the high decree of fate
Be false and vain;
Where'er the Scots shall find this stone,
There they must reign.

2. When Alexander sat mantled, sceptred, and crowned on the Stone of Destiny, in front of the altar at the east end of the church of Scone, a venerable white-bearded Highland Bard, clad in a scarlet cloak, came forward and recited in Gaelic the genealogy of the young king. This incident shows us that notwithstanding the long continued influence of the Normans and Saxons at the Scottish court, the old customs of the Celtic Scots could not yet be disregarded at the coronation of the Scottish kings. Two years after his coronation, Alexander, though only ten years old, was married at York to his cousin, Margaret the daughter of Henry III. The English king on that occasion, when the boy king was doing homage for his English estates of Penrith and Tyndale, demanded of him homage for Scotland also; but Alexander, inspired doubtless by the instructions

of his mother, Mary de Coucy, answered that this matter, on which he had not consulted the chief men of his realm, was too important to be discussed at a marriage feast.

3. In the year 1280 the king and his queen visited the court of King Henry, where a daughter was born, named Margaret, who was destined to have an important influence on the course of Scottish history.

4. While the Scots from the time of Kenneth Macalpin had been extending their sway over the greater part of the mainland of Scotland, the Norsemen or Danes had established themselves in all the isles from Orkney and Shetland to the Isle of Man; and had even occupied Argyle, where the Dalriad Scots from Ireland had first established the Scottish monarchy. The chiefs of these districts, when they did not assert their independence, professed allegiance to Norway rather than to Scotland. It had long been the aim of the Scottish kings to make the chiefs of Argyle and the Isles acknowledge their dependence on the Scottish crown, and we have seen that Alexander II. died at Kerrera, on an expedition with this end in view. Alexander III. took active measures to carry out the policy of his father. When Haco, King of Norway, heard this, he determined to make a great effort to keep under his rule all the western islands and those parts of the mainland whose chiefs had hitherto acknowledged him as their superior. Accordingly, in the summer of 1263, he assembled a mighty fleet at Bergen, and though he was an old man, who had reigned for six-and-forty winters, he took the command of it himself; and leaving his son to govern the kingdom in his absence, set sail for Orkney, over which the Scottish kings had never claimed any authority.

5. Haco next conducted his fleet of one hundred and sixty ships to Caithness. Thence he passed southward by Lewis and Skye, and onward by Cantyre and Islay, levying contributions and exacting submission from the chiefs as he passed. The great fleet at length swept round the Mull of Cantyre, and cast anchor between Arran and the coast of Ayrshire. A small detachment under Haco's son-in-law, Magnus, King of Man, sailed up Loch Long, dragged their galleys across the isthmus of Tarbert, launched them on Loch Lomond, on the eastern shore of which they landed and ravaged the rich district of Lennox. The Scots tried to come to terms with Haco. They would have been content to keep the mainland, and the islands inclosed by it, leaving the outer isles to Norway, but Haco would give up none of his claims.

6. The Scots negotiated no more, for the winter was coming on, and their forces were gathering on the heights above the Ayrshire coast. Severe storms broke up the great fleet by dashing many of the ships against each other, and stranding others on the rocky shores. A number of galleys were cast ashore near the village of Largs. The Scots attacked their crews, to whom the fleet sent assistance, which being insufficient, Haco at last landed a large force which was completely defeated. Baffled and disappointed, the old Norse king withdrew with the shattered remnants of his fleet; and though storms still followed him, he succeeded in reaching the Orkneys, where full of shame and sorrow he died on the 12th of December, 1263.

7. In 1266, **Magnus**, the new King of Norway, gave up Man and all the Western Isles to the King of Scots, who by way of compensation agreed to pay to Norway a thousand marks and an annual rent of a hundred marks. In 1281 peace was still further established between the two countries by the marriage of the Scottish Princess Margaret to Eric, the eldest son of the Norwegian king; but she died in the following year, after giving birth to a princess, who was called Margaret the *Maid of Norway*. A few months afterwards the Scottish king's only son, Alexander, died in 1283. This threw the country into a state of consternation, for the nearest heirs to the crown after the Maid of Norway, the king's grandchild, were all Norman barons, with possessions in England as well as in Scotland; and the mass of the Scottish people disliked the Norman intruders, and dreaded subjection to Norman rule such as they had seen England suffering under for two hundred years.

8. The Estates met at Scone immediately after the prince's death, and resolved, should the king himself have no more children, that the crown should go to the Princess of Norway. The king's first wife being dead, he, in 1285, married Joleta, daughter of the Count of Dreux, but a few months after, while riding along the coast of Fife, near Kinghorn, his horse stumbled and he was pitched over the rocks and killed. He left no children, and, as the Estates had resolved, his granddaughter, the **Princess of Norway** became Queen of Scotland (1286).

Summary.—Alexander III. was scarcely eight years old when he was crowned on the Stone of Destiny at Scone, in 1249. At the age of ten he married Margaret, the daughter of Henry III. The English king on that occasion wished him to do homage for Scotland as well as for his English estates; but the boy king said that

the chief men of his realm had not been consulted on the subject, and that the matter was too important to be discussed at a marriage feast. The Norsemen had gradually established themselves in all the isles from Shetland to the Isle of Man, and even on the mainland of Argyle, and they professed allegiance to Norway rather than to Scotland. Alexander III. wished to make the chiefs of Argyle and the Isles acknowledge their dependence on the Scottish crown. When Haco, King of Norway, heard this, he collected a great fleet, and in 1263 sailed along the west coast exacting homage from the chiefs as he went; but the Scots defeated him at Largs, and compelled him to withdraw with his shattered fleet to Orkney where he died. Haco's son, Magnus, ceded the Western Isles to the Scots in 1266. In 1281 the Scottish king's daughter, Margaret, was married to Eric, the eldest son of the King of Norway, but next year she died in giving birth to a daughter, who, on the death of Alexander's only son a few months after, became heiress to the throne of Scotland. In 1286, Alexander III., when riding one dark night between Burntisland and Kinghorn, fell with his horse over a precipice and was killed.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded Alexander II.? How old was he? Who was his mother? What was her character? What did her guidance enable him to do? Where was he crowned? Whence had the Stone of Destiny been brought? Who removed it from Scotland? Where is it still kept? To what purpose is it still put? Repeat the prophecy connected with this stone.

2. What ceremony took place at the coronation of Alexander? To whom was Alexander married? What relation was she to Alexander? What did Henry demand from Alexander on the occasion of his marriage? What reply did Alexander make?

3. Where was their daughter Margaret born?

4. Where had the Norsemen established themselves? What had therefore been the aim of the Scottish kings? What Scottish king had died when on an expedition for this purpose? Who determined to oppose Alexander III. in carrying out this policy? What did he do? In what

year was this? Where did he first land?

5. What part of the mainland did Haco first visit? Where did he go next? After rounding Cantyre, where did he anchor? How did Magnus reach the district of Lennox? What terms did the Scots propose?

6. When Haco rejected these why did the Scots cease to negotiate? Where was part of the fleet driven ashore? What did the Scots do? What did Haco then do? What was the result? What is this battle called? What became of Haco?

7. Who succeeded Haco? What terms were arranged between Magnus and Alexander? How was peace still further cemented between the two countries? When? When did the Princess Margaret die? What was her infant called? When did Alexander's only son die? What effect had this upon the country? Why? Why did the Scots dislike the Norman barons?

8. Where did the Estates meet? What did they resolve? What accident happened to the king? When?

CHAPTER VIII.

CONDITION OF SCOTLAND BEFORE THE DEATH OF
ALEXANDER III.

1. Scotland, at the death of Alexander III. in 1286, had made considerable progress in wealth and civilization. Since 1217 there had been peace and much kindly intercourse between the countries on each side of the Border. The attempted invasion of Haco affected only the Western Isles for a few months, and the battle of Largs, being merely local, had no appreciable effect in retarding the material prosperity of the nation.

2. We have seen how the Dalriad Scots came from Ireland and settled in Argyle, how their kings extended their sway over *Pictland* north of the Forth, *Strathclyde* or Cumbria between the Solway and the Clyde, and *Northumbria* or Lothian between the Forth and the Tweed; and consolidated the whole into a kingdom of Scotland. We have seen how the Saxon population of Scotland was increased after the Norman Conquest of England, both by royal fugitives and by others of less high degree; how the Scottish kings, by marrying Saxon and Norman princesses, had almost ceased to be of the Celtic race, and how from this and other causes the court and the nobility of Scotland became chiefly Norman and Saxon, and the feudal system prevailed over the older laws and customs of the country.

3. The kings of Scots had latterly come to regard their subjects as consisting of four distinct races, and in their written documents addressed them as *Franks*, *Angles*, *Scots*, and *Galwegians*. The Franks were the Norman settlers, the Angles were the Saxon refugees and the people of the Lothians, the Scots were the dwellers in the country north of the Forth, and the Galwegians were the inhabitants of the districts bordering on the Solway. The term Scotland, which now signified the whole kingdom, had long been more particularly applied to the country north of the Forth, which, with its Firth, was called the **Scots Water**.

4. These various races had laws and customs of their own, but the general system of government was feudal. The king administered justice, but in great questions only. There was a code of feudal law by which the administration of justice was regulated, and there were chief-justices and sheriffs appointed by the crown; but these offices often became hereditary and almost independent of the central authority, and decisions often depended less on written law than on

the arbitrary will of the feudal lord, to whom was intrusted the "power of pit and gallows." Alexander III. did much to remedy these evils. He was in the habit of making an annual progress through his kingdom, attended by his justiciar, his principal nobles, and a military force; and in every county he heard all appeals that were brought before him. Wrong-doing and oppression were thus checked, and the common people, having peace and security, were enabled to follow their occupations with some assurance that they would be permitted to enjoy the fruits of their industry.

5. There was no capital city in Scotland; but the kings had favourite royal residences which became centres of wealth and civilizing influence. Such were Scone, Stirling, Forfar, Aberdeen, Inverness, Edinburgh, Roxburgh, and Berwick. These and many other towns had charters granted to them by the kings, and were called *Royal Burghs*. The word *broch* signified one who became security for another, and the **Brochs** or Burghs meant communities that were pledges or securities for each other. The spirit of these burghs was antagonistic to feudalism. The people in the rural districts were, many of them, the serfs or slaves, and all were the vassals of the great lords, but the inhabitants of the burghs were free, governed by laws of their own, and in the enjoyment of special privileges conferred on them by their charters. Every royal burgh held, like the great barons, directly of the crown; but the burghs could not within their bounds create vassals subservient to them, as the great lords could do on their domains.

6. The burghs were thus a part of the feudal system, but their inhabitants being on a footing of equality, and having trading and industrial interests in common to strengthen and protect against the overbearing and encroaching spirit of the great nobles who surrounded them, became democratic communities, having a spirit of opposition to the great feudal lords, which made the kings favour and encourage them as a means of enabling them to keep in check the power of their nobles.

7. The trade of some of these towns had, in the time of Alexander III., become very great. Berwick, in particular, from its wealth and magnificence, was regarded as the rival of London. There was much trade in skins and peltries; and such luxuries as marten, sable, and beaver skins were imported. There was a considerable trade in fish along the northern and eastern coasts. The Scots of that time could afford to enjoy the products of warmer climes; for we read of duties levied on pepper, cumin, ginger, almonds, rice, figs, and raisins.

Hotels and taverns were common throughout the country, and wine was an article of common consumption. There were bakers who baked "white bread, and brown, and gray," brewers of good ale, and fleshers and pastry-cooks; and strict regulations were made to insure that the food and drink they prepared and cooked should be of good quality. There thus appears to have been no lack of good living in the old Scots life.

8. Comfortable clothing as well as good food seems also to have been abundant; for there were in those days weavers and tailors, skimmers, shoemakers, and glovers. Agriculture was faithfully attended to. Wheat grew then as now in the fertile plains of Moray. Hamlets, granges, and farm steadings were scattered all over the country in the midst of cornfields and pasture-lands. In the fields in spring might be seen the ponderous plough drawn by twelve oxen, and at other seasons the sower, the sheep-shearer, the wool-carter, and the peat-carrier engaged in their several occupations. In the cottages the women made butter and cheese, and carded and spun the wool. The clack of the busy mill and the anvil's din were heard beside almost every grange and hamlet.

9. The art of gardening was not unknown. The king had a gardener at Forfar, and we read of gardens in Morayshire, whence pot-herbs were supplied to the king's table, when he dwelt in his castle of Elgin. Good roads, which promote trade and are a sure sign of considerable civilization, were not uncommon. We not only read of green roads or cattle-tracks, but of causewayed roads, fit for wheeled carts or carriages. There were bridges, too, not only over small streams, but spanning the great rivers. The Forth, at Stirling, the Tay, at Perth, and the South Esk, at Brechin, were crossed by bridges. There was a bridge over the North Esk, another over the Spey, and two or three over the Dee.

10. These facts, and many others of a similar kind, indicate that Scotland, before the death of Alexander III., was prosperous and comparatively civilized; more so, perhaps, than she ever again became till the time when she ceased to be a separate kingdom in 1707. We have now to read the story of the events which checked her progress, and brought upon her centuries of bloodshed and strife.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what condition was Scotland at the death of Alexander III.? How long had there been peace between Scotland and England?

2. How had the Saxon population been increased? What effects had the marriage of the Scottish kings with Saxon and Norman princesses?

3. What four races now inhabited Scotland? Who were the Franks? the Angles? the Scots? the Galwegians? To what had the term Scotland been applied? What was the Scots Water?

4. In what cases did the king administer justice? Who were appointed by the king to administer justice? On what did decisions often depend? What power was intrusted to the feudal lord? Who partially remedied these evils? How did he do this? With what result?

5. Name the favourite residences of the kings. What were towns which had royal charters called? What were meant by burghs? To what was the spirit of burghs opposed? In what condition were many of the people in rural districts? How were the burghs governed? What differ-

ence was there between the power of the burghs and that of the great barons?

6. Why did the kings favour the burghs?

7. What town was regarded as the rival of London? Mention some of the articles of commerce. Mention some of the articles of import from warmer climes. What regulations were made regarding food?

8. Name some of the trades. Where was wheat grown? What might be seen in the fields in spring? What were the occupations of the female peasants?

9. What are good roads a sign of? Mention another thing which shows progress in civilization.

10. What was the state of the kingdom at the death of Alexander III.?

CHAPTER IX.

THE MAID OF NORWAY.—THE COMPETITORS FOR THE CROWN, 1286-1294 A.D., 8 Years.

The Estates appoint six guardians of the kingdom, ..	1286
The Treaty of Birgham agreed to,	1290
Death of the Maid of Norway,	1290
The competitors for the crown meet Edward I. at Norham,	1291
John Balliol declared King of Scotland,	1292
Philip of France cites Edward I. to appear before him as his vassal,	1294
The Scots enter into a league with France,	1294

1. Within a month after the death of Alexander III., the Scottish Estates met at Scone and appointed *six guardians* of the kingdom in the absence of the young queen—three to rule in the country north of the Forth, and three to have authority from the Forth to the Tweed. If Edward I. had been *Lord Paramount* of Scotland, as he afterwards said he was, he would have been guardian of the kingdom, and the infant queen would have been at his disposal. Edward I. does not at first seem to have been regarded with much jealousy by the Scots. They, perhaps, thought he acted a friendly and a kindly part in trying to secure peace and good order in the kingdom of his sister's granddaughter. For a time this seemed to be, and, perhaps, really was, his only aim. From the first he was

desirous that his eldest son Edward should marry the Scottish queen, and, when this proposal was known, the Scottish Estates seem to have heartily accepted it. They doubtless believed that the peace of the kingdom would be best secured in this way; and if the English king had in view the ultimate union of the two kingdoms, it was a desirable end he was aiming at. As a preliminary of the marriage, however, the Scottish clergy, nobility, and whole community insisted on the independence of their country being secured by a solemn treaty.

2. At Birgham, near Berwick, on the 18th July, 1290, it was solemnly agreed between them and Edward that the kingdom of Scotland should remain separate from England, that its rights, laws, and liberties should continue entire, that no crown vassal should go out of Scotland to do homage, that no native of Scotland should answer beyond the marches in a civil cause or for a crime committed by him in Scotland, that no Parliament for the discussion of Scottish affairs should be held out of the country, and that there should be a national Great Seal always held by a Scotsman. Edward accepted this treaty; but he soon after demanded possession of the royal fortresses of Scotland, under the pretence that he would be the better able to maintain the laws and protect the kingdom. The Estates refused to give up the royal castles, and Edward did not seem displeased at the refusal. Soon after this it was announced that the young queen had died at Orkney on her way from Norway, and this sad news filled the country with sorrow and dismal forebodings.

3. A number of competitors for the crown now appeared, all of them Normans, and the chief of them, such as **Bruce** and **Baliol**, Barons of England, and owning large possessions there. Edward, disappointed in his hopes of uniting Scotland to England by fair means, determined to get possession of it by means that were not fair. He resolved to revive the claim of homage for the whole of Scotland which Richard Cœur de Lion had given up because, for this, among other reasons, it had been extorted by his father when he had the King of Scotland in his power. The kings of Scotland, however, had never since acknowledged the claim, and Edward himself had not made it on the death of Alexander III., when, if it had been a valid claim, he was in duty bound to make it, and act upon it.

4. In June, 1291, Edward held a great meeting at *Norham*, on the south side of the Tweed, at which most of the competitors for the

vacant crown were present. The English king addressed the assembly in fair words. He said that he was touched by the calamities that had befallen Scotland, that he had come as *Overlord* of the kingdom to do justice to all, and that as a matter of courtesy, but not because there was any doubt on the subject, he desired those present to acknowledge him as their *Superior* or *Overlord*. The Scots refused to comply with this request till they had consulted with the prelates, nobles, and community of Scotland, and three weeks were allowed for this purpose. At the end of that time another meeting was held in a meadow opposite Norham, on the Scottish side of the Tweed; when the prelates and barons did not oppose Edward's claim, but the community gave an answer to it, which the English king declared to be not to the point, and which we may therefore conclude was unfavourable.

5. There were ten competitors for the crown, who all acknowledged Edward as Lord Superior. Three of these, **John Baliol**, **John Comyn**, and **Robert Bruce**, had claims superior to the others, being descended from David, Earl of Huntingdon, brother of William the Lion. Earl David's eldest daughter, Margaret, had married Allan of Galloway. She had two daughters; Devorgoil, who became the wife of John Baliol, a Yorkshire baron; and Marjory, who was married to John Comyn, Lord of Badenoch. Earl David's second daughter, Isobel, had married Robert de Bruce, who had lands in England, and was also Lord of Annandale. John Baliol, the son of Devorgoil, the granddaughter of David, Earl of Huntingdon, had evidently a better claim than John Comyn, the son of her younger sister.

6. The contest thus lay between John Baliol, the grandson of Earl David's eldest daughter, and Robert Bruce, the son of Isobel, his second daughter. Baliol pleaded that he was more in the direct line from the royal stock, Bruce that he was a generation nearer to it. Edward made a great show of deliberation and impartiality. Many meetings were held on the subject at Norham, sometimes on the Scottish, and sometimes on the English side of the Tweed, and occasionally at Berwick. Edward allowed Baliol and Bruce to choose each forty arbiters, to whom he himself added twenty-four. The meeting at which this was allowed was held on the 3d August, 1291, after which the whole business was adjourned to June, 1292.

7. Edward broke the great seal of Scotland into four pieces and substituted a new one. He intimated that his writs should henceforth be current in Scotland as well as in England. He caused the

guardians to give up to him the national fortresses, and ordered them to exact an oath of allegiance to himself from all persons in their districts. He also collected and carried away to England all the *ancient records of the kingdom*.

8. In June, 1292, the meetings about the succession were again resumed, and after many pleadings Edward's twenty-four arbiters declared that by the law of England the progeny of an elder sister had a better claim to an inheritance than the progeny of a younger sister. The English king, therefore, in November, 1292, chose John Baliol to be his vassal king of Scotland.

9. Baliol was crowned at Scone on the Stone of Destiny, and did homage to Edward for his whole kingdom of Scotland at Newcastle on 26th December, 1292. It was not the wish of Edward that Baliol should rule his subjects in peace. He encouraged appeals from the Scottish to the English courts, and though Baliol pleaded that by the Treaty of Birgham no native of Scotland should be required to plead to a suit out of the realm, he made Baliol renounce that treaty and stand at the bar at Westminster like a private gentleman.

10. In 1294 Philip of France cited Edward to appear before him as his vassal. Edward did not appear before Philip, and Philip pronounced judgment against him, and the forfeiture of his domains in France. The Scots thought this a good opportunity for shaking off the yoke of England. They entered into a league with France and made two raids across the Border, but returned without gaining any solid advantage.

Summary.—In 1286, a few months after the death of Alexander III., the Scottish Estates met and appointed guardians of the kingdom. Edward I. was desirous that the young Queen of Scots should be married to his eldest son, and the Scottish Estates agreed to the union; but by the Treaty of Birgham they provided for the independence of the Scottish nation. Edward demanded that for the better protection of the kingdom the royal castles should be given up to him, but this the Estates refused. Soon after word came that the young queen had died at Orkney on her way to Scotland. A number of competitors for the crown now appeared, chief of whom were John Baliol, a grandson of the eldest daughter of David, Earl of Huntingdon, and Robert Bruce, the son of David's second daughter. Edward I. now claimed to be Overlord of Scotland, and the right to decide who should be his vassal king. He decided in favour of Baliol, who was crowned at Scone in 1292, and did homage to

Edward for his whole kingdom of Scotland. Edward did not allow his vassal to reign in peace, but encouraged appeals from the Scottish to the English courts. He even made Baliol stand at the bar at Westminster to answer charges against him. In 1294 a quarrel took place between Philip of France and Edward. The Scots, judging the opportunity favourable, entered into a league with France and made raids across the Border; but gained no solid advantage.

QUESTIONS.

1. When and where did the Scottish Estates meet on the death of Alexander III.? What did they do? Who was the heir? Where was she? Had Edward I. been Lord Paramount of Scotland what position would he have assumed at this time? What at first seems to have been his aim? What match did he propose? How did the Scottish Estates receive the proposal? What did they believe would be secured by it? What was insisted on by the Scots as a preliminary?

2. What treaty was entered into? When? What were the terms? What did Edward soon after demand? Under what pretext? How was the refusal received? What news reached Scotland soon after this? What effect did the news produce?

3. To what race did the competitors for the crown belong? What position in England did the chief competitors hold? What did Edward now determine? What claim did he resolve to revive? Who had given up this claim?

4. Where did the competitors meet Edward? What did the English king say to them? What did he ask the assembly to acknowledge? What did the Scots ask to be allowed to do? What time did Edward allow for this? Where was the next meeting held? Who did not oppose the claim? Who did?

5. How many competitors were there? What did these all acknowledge? Name the three who had

claims superior to the others. From whom were they descended? Whom had Margaret, eldest daughter of the Earl of Huntingdon, married? Name her two daughters. Whom had Devorgill married? To whom was Marjory married? Who was the second daughter of David, Earl of Huntingdon? To whom was she married? What lordship did he hold in Scotland?

6. Between which two did the contest lie? What did Baliol plead? What did Bruce plead? What did Edward allow Baliol and Bruce to do? How many arbiters did he add?

7. What did Edward do with the great seal of Scotland? After substituting a new seal what did he intimate? What did he order the guardians to do? What did he carry away to England?

8. What did Edward's arbiters declare? What decision did Edward then give? When?

9. Where was Baliol crowned? For what did he do homage to Edward? Where? When? What did Edward encourage? What did Baliol plead? What did he then make Baliol renounce? In what manner had he to appear at the bar of Westminster?

10. When did Philip of France cite Edward to appear before him? When Edward did not appear what did Philip do? What did the Scots think this a good opportunity of doing? What league did they make? What did they then do? With what result?

CHAPTER X.

USURPATION OF EDWARD I.—WALLACE, 1296-1297 A.D.

Edward takes Berwick, leads his army as far as Elgin, carries away the Stone of Destiny, garrisons the Scottish castles with English soldiers, and dethrones Baliol,	1296
Wallace after having killed Hazelrigg at Lanark, and performed other exploits, defeats the English at Stirling Bridge,	1297

1. Edward was content to be a loser in his contest with France, provided he could make himself complete master of Scotland. He accordingly devoted all his energies to the subjugation of that kingdom. With 30,000 foot soldiers, and 5000 horsemen, clad in complete mail, he marched northwards and crossed the Tweed a few miles above its mouth, with the intention of occupying Berwick. This town, the richest in Scotland, where Edward had but lately held his meetings, and to which he had come and gone at his pleasure, now determined to resist him. The citizens not only provoked him by taunts, but they rendered him furious by burning some ships that had been sent to attack the town from the sea. He took the place by assault, and slew 25,700 of its inhabitants. *The Flemings* had an establishment in Berwick, called the *Red House*, which they bravely defended for some time after the town was taken; but it was at length set on fire and thirty of its defenders were burned within it. The castle made terms with the conqueror, and its garrison was spared. Thus fell the great city of Berwick. It never afterwards recovered its greatness either in wealth or population.

2. Before the English king left Berwick he received from Baliol a renunciation of his vassalship. "The foolish traitor, what folly," said Edward. "If he won't come to me, I must go to him." Having dug a trench, and built a rampart on the Scottish side of Berwick, Edward marched northwards, took Dunbar, Roxburgh, and other castles, and arrived at Edinburgh on the 14th of June, 1296. He took up his abode for a time in the Abbey of Holyrood, where he got possession of the *Black Rood*, alleged to be a bit of the true cross. This relic Edward carried with him and made those who swore allegiance to him take the oath upon it. By day and by night for a whole week he pelted Edinburgh Castle with three engines and then took it by assault.

3. The English king went next to Stirling, and finding the castle deserted, he marched on to St. Johnstone or Perth, where he halted three days and kept the feast of the nativity of John the Baptist. Brechin was reached early in July, and to the castle of that city John Baliol came and made submission. The vassal king was



Edinburgh Castle about 1650.

stripped of his royal robes, spoiled of his crown and sceptre, and compelled to stand like a criminal with a white rod in his hand, and perform a humiliating feudal penance. Being dispossessed of his kingdom, Baliol, together with his son, was sent to London, where they were kept for three years prisoners in the Tower, after which they were delivered up to the representative of the Pope, who saw them quietly settled in their domains of *Bailleul* in France. Edward went on to Aberdeen, where he spent a few days. Thence he proceeded to Elgin, where he halted on the 26th of July. He then turned southward again and reached Berwick on the 22d of August.

4. In this march through Scotland, Edward exacted homage from nearly all the Scottish nobility. He carried away from Scone the *Stone of Destiny*, and whatever else he could find that belonged to Scottish royalty or seemed connected with Scottish nationality.

5. It was evidently Edward's policy to incorporate Scotland with England. With this end in view he garrisoned the strongholds with

English soldiers, and gave the command of them to Englishmen. He made Warenne, Earl of Surrey, guardian; Hugh Cressingham, treasurer; and Ormesby, justiciar.

6. The Scots, after Edward's return to England, did not bear the yoke patiently, and the conduct of the English was more calculated to irritate than to soothe them. King Edward soon found it necessary to write to Cressingham to bring to justice the wicked rebels with whom the land swarmed, and to crush the rebellion. Heavy taxes were imposed on the people, and the English soldiers everywhere conducted themselves in a cruel and tyrannical manner. The Scots soon became ripe for revolt, but they wanted a leader. Oppression raised them up one in the person of

Sir William Wallace.

7. Wallace was the second son of Sir Malcolm Wallace of Ellerslie, in Renfrewshire. We do not know whether he was of Norman, Saxon, or Celtic descent, but he was a gentleman whose family had long been settled in the country, and had no possessions elsewhere. He had himself been knighted, and thus by the etiquette of Norman chivalry was as much entitled to lead armies as any king or noble of his time. His exploits have been recorded by Blind Harry, a minstrel, who lived nearly two hundred years after, and who embodied in a poem, and doubtless greatly embellished, the traditions which were then current among the Scottish people, concerning their great national deliverer. There is much in the *minstrel's* life of Wallace that is fabulous, but the general outlines of the story are true, for many of its statements have been corroborated by the evidence of English chronicles, written not long after the hero's death.

8. Wallace was not only a man of great personal strength, but he was wonderfully gifted with political foresight and military skill. He had often resented the insults of the English soldiers, and was consequently a marked man before he married Marion Bradfute, the heiress of Lamington, who lived in the town of Lanark, where there was an English garrison. He could only visit his bride by stealth.

9. On one of these occasions he encountered in the town a party of soldiers, whose taunts and ribald jokes he patiently bore, until a foul jest was made with respect to his wife. Then he drew his sword and cut off the slanderer's hand. A scuffle ensued and he was pressed backward by overwhelming numbers, many of whom, however, he cut down as he retreated to his own door, which was opened by his wife and closed so quickly and firmly after his entrance

that he was enabled to escape to the country. For this service his wife was ill-used, and put to death by Hazelrigg, the governor of Lanark. Wallace vowed revenge, gathered round him a few faithful followers, and issuing with them from the Cartland Crag, fell upon the garrison, killed William de Hazelrigg and set fire to the place.

10. This and similar exploits inspired many of the Scottish people with confidence in Wallace. In a short time a considerable number of brave men, animated by a hatred of English oppression and a love of independence, gathered round him. He and his followers attacked the great justiciar, Ormesby, when holding his court at Scone, and forced him to flee for his life. Wallace was soon after this joined by William of Douglas, a soldier of renown, who had been commander of the castle of Berwick when it capitulated. He had done homage to King Edward, and by joining Wallace he set an example of renouncing an oath of allegiance that had been extorted by force.

11. Beck, the fighting bishop of Durham, was sent to quell the insurrection, but he was attacked in Glasgow and had to seek safety in flight. Beck brought the tidings of his own discomfiture and of the rising rebellion in Scotland to Edward, when he was about to start for Flanders. The English king having with him most of the Scottish barons, and knowing that Bruce and a few others left at home were well watched, thought that the disturbance could be put down by his commanders. He accordingly directed Surrey to levy the military array of England north of the Trent, and march to Scotland. Surrey raised an army of 40,000 men, but instead of leading them himself, he put them under the command of his nephew, Percy, who entered Scotland by the western marches, and led them through Bruce's country of Annandale and on by Ayr to Irvine.

12. Bruce, who had been competitor with Baliol for the crown, had died before this time at an advanced age. His son, who had married the Countess of Carrick, was living quietly on his estates in England; but his grandson, the destined deliverer of Scotland, lived in Carrick as lord of his mother's domains. Young Bruce was of a restless and fiery temper, and doubtless wished to see his country freed from the English yoke, but he was so circumstanced that he did not well know how to act. He regarded himself as the rightful heir to the crown for which his grandfather had competed. He could not join Wallace with the expectation of obtaining the crown,

for Wallace regarded himself as the servant of King John, who had been crowned at Scone, and did everything in the name of "John by the grace of God, King of the Scots." As a Norman, whose family had possessions in England, the Scottish people could not yet have the same confidence in him as they had in Wallace, and he could hardly expect their support if he aimed at Scottish independence, and the crown for himself. He knew besides, that whether he joined Wallace, or struck a blow for Scottish independence on his own account, he had the vengeance of Edward to dread in case of failure. These considerations may account for the vacillating policy of Bruce in the early part of his career.

13. At the time when Percy came to Irvine at the head of his army of 40,000 men, Bruce with his Carrick men and other barons and their followers were there in arms with the intent of doing something for their country either in co-operation with Wallace or on their own account; but deeming it imprudent to oppose such a force they surrendered on terms.

14. When Edward heard of the surrender at Irvine, he was relieved in a great measure from his anxiety about Scotland, and thought he might with safety depart for Flanders. Meanwhile Wallace appears to have been in the north, raising men and organizing plans for resisting the invading army at the Forth. He had got together a considerable force, had taken nearly all the strongholds north of the Tay from the English, and was besieging the Castle of Dundee, when he heard that Surrey, who had now joined his nephew, and Cressingham, the treasurer, were leading the English army towards Stirling Bridge (1297).

15. Wallace resolved that they should not cross that bridge. Ordering the citizens of Dundee on pain of death to continue the siege of the castle, he made a rapid march towards Stirling, and posted his army in a favourable position in a loop of the Forth opposite the bridge, and in front of an abrupt but accessible rock called the Abbey Craig. Wallace's army consisted of 40,000 foot soldiers and 150 mounted men. The English had 50,000 foot soldiers and 1000 horsemen. Early on the morning of the 11th September, the English began to stream across the narrow bridge. The Scottish army stood silent and motionless on the slopes of the Abbey Craig until about 11 o'clock, when Wallace, seeing that about half of the English army had crossed, sent round a detachment of his men to seize the head of the bridge, and stop all passage to or from it. Then the Scots at a signal from their leader rushed down from the

higher ground, and fell upon the English, who were thrown into utter confusion. A terrible slaughter ensued. Multitudes were drowned in the river. Surrey, after beholding the destruction of his army, rode to Berwick without drawing bridle. Cressingham was among the first who fell in the battle, and the Scots showed their detestation of him by tearing the skin from his limbs, and mangling his dead body.

16. This victory temporarily freed Scotland from the power of the English. The castle of Dundee at once surrendered, and in a short time not a single Scottish stronghold remained in the hands of Edward. Berwick was also recovered. The towns of Lubeck and Hamburg were invited by "Andrew de Moray and William Wallace, generals of the kingdom and community of Scotland," to resume their commerce with the ports of Scotland, for "thanks be to God it had been recovered by battle from the power of the English." Scotland's hopes of resuming her peaceful commercial pursuits were not to be realized, for evil days were at hand.

Summary.—Edward turned his attention from France and devoted all his energies to the subjugation of Scotland. He led a great army to Berwick, and took the town by assault. To Edward at Berwick, John Baliol sent a renunciation of his vassalship. Edward marched northwards, taking on his way Dunbar, Edinburgh, Perth, and other towns, till he reached Brechin, where Baliol came and made his submission and was dispossessed of his kingdom. Edward led his army as far as Elgin, and then turned southwards carrying with him the Stone of Destiny, and everything that seemed connected with Scottish nationality. He filled the Scottish castles with English soldiers, and gave the command of them to Englishmen. The people, heavily taxed and ill-treated by the soldiers, were ripe for rebellion when William Wallace appeared. Wallace, in revenge for the ill-treatment of his wife, killed Hazelrigg, the governor of Lanark, attacked the justiciar Ormesby at Scone, and put him to flight. Edward sent Surrey, Percy, and Cressingham to put down the rising in Scotland, while he himself set out for Flanders. Wallace met the English army at Stirling Bridge, where he allowed half of it to cross, and then attacked and completely defeated it. Thus was Scotland freed for a short time from the power of the English.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. To what did Edward devote all his energies? With how many men did he invade Scotland? Where did | he enter Scotland? What town did he intend to occupy? What position did it hold among the towns of Scot- |
|--|--|

land? How did its citizens provoke him? How many of its inhabitants were slain on its capture? What was the Red House? What happened on its capture? Why was the garrison of the castle spared?

2. What did Edward receive before leaving Berwick? What did Edward say? What did Edward do before leaving Berwick? What castles did he take on his road to Edinburgh? On reaching Edinburgh where did he take up his abode? What relic did he get possession of there? What use did he make of it? How did he take Edinburgh Castle?

3. Where did he go next? How long did he stay at Perth? What feast did he keep there? When did he reach Brechin? Who came to him there? For what purpose? What penance had he to undergo? Where were he and his son sent? How long were they kept prisoners? To whom were they then delivered? What did he do with them? Before turning southward what other towns did he visit? When did he reach Berwick?

4. From whom did Edward exact homage? What did he carry away with him?

5. What was evidently Edward's policy? Whom did he appoint to the chief offices?

6. What effect had the conduct of the English upon the Scots? What did Edward order Cressingham to do?

7. Who was Wallace? Where were the family possessions? What did his knighthood entitle him to do? Who has recorded his exploits? When did this minstrel live? What evidence have we of the truth of many of his statements?

8. With what was Wallace specially gifted? What made him a marked man? Whom did he marry? What was she? Where did she live? Why could he only visit her by stealth?

9. What roused his wrath against the soldiers in Lanark? What did he do? What then took place? How did he escape? What happened to his wife? What did Wallace do?

10. What effect had these and simi-

lar exploits upon the people? How did this feeling show itself? On what occasion did he attack Ormesby? Who soon after joined him? Where had he been commander? When? Of what did he set an example?

11. Who was sent to quell the insurrection? Where was he attacked? What was the result? What tidings did Beck carry to Edward? What was Edward about to do? What did he think? Why? Whom did he order to put down the insurrection? How many troops did he raise? Under whose command were they placed? On which side did they enter Scotland? What road did they take?

12. Who now represented the Bruce line? Whom had he married? Where was he living? Where was their son living? What was his disposition? What did he look upon himself as? Why could he not join Wallace? Why could the Scots not have full confidence in Bruce? What had he to fear if he failed to gain the crown? What may these considerations account for?

13. When Percy came to Irvine where was young Bruce? Who were with him? With what intention? What did they do? Why?

14. What led Edward to think he might depart for Flanders? What was Wallace meanwhile doing? Where? Where did he intend to meet the invading army? What was he doing when he heard of the advance of the English?

15. What did he order the citizens of Dundee to do? What did he do? Where did he post his army? What was the strength of each army? When did the English commence to cross Stirling Bridge? How long did the Scots remain inactive? What did Wallace then do? What did the Scottish army now do? What followed? What became of Surrey? Of Cressingham? How did the Scots show their detestation of him?

16. What was the effect of this victory? What invitation was sent to Lubeck and Hamburg? What reason was given?

CHAPTER XI.

WALLACE CONTINUED, 1297-1305 A.D., 8 Years.

Wallace invades England,	1297
Battle of Falkirk,	1298
Battle of Roslin,	1303
Death of Sir Thomas Maule at Brechin,	1303
Siege of Stirling,	1303
Betrayal and execution of Wallace,	1305

1. A famine fell upon Scotland in the autumn and winter of 1297, when partly to get food, and partly to take vengeance on their enemies, the Scots crossed the Border and wasted Cumberland and Westmoreland. Wallace was now made *Guardian of the kingdom of Scotland*, and commander of its armies in name of King John. He was supported by the commonalty, but his efforts to secure the independence of the country were not heartily seconded by the feudal lords.

2. Edward was in Flanders when he heard of the defeat of his army at Stirling. He returned from that country with all possible speed, got grants from his Parliament, and raised an army of 80,000 footmen and 7000 horsemen, with which he entered Scotland in the summer of 1298. The English army was delayed for some time at the Castle of Dirleton, near North Berwick, which was taken after an obstinate defence. Wallace had been able to raise little more than 20,000 footmen and 1000 horsemen to oppose the mighty host of England. But he adopted the policy of clearing the country before the invaders, so that they could get food for neither man nor horse. He resolved to avoid a battle, and wait till starvation should force his enemies to retreat, and then to harass them on their homeward march. Unfortunately, after orders had been given for the retreat of the English, the position of Wallace was made known to Edward by a boy sent to him by two base Scottish knights.

3. Edward lost no time in acting on the information. The English army marched from Kirkliston to Linlithgow, where they lay one night, king and all, on the bare ground. A careless page allowed the king's horse to put his foot on the king as he slept, whereby two of his ribs were broken. Edward was so eager to do battle with Wallace, that he would not stop to have his wounds tended, but gave orders at early morn to march. Wallace, though unwilling to fight with such odds against him, did not see any chance of safety in retreat, as the English were so near. He drew up his little army

with great skill on a rising ground near *Falkirk*. He divided his men into circles. In each circle the men in the outer line knelt down and held their lances slanting outwards in such close array



The Palace of Linlithgow, as now existing.

that repeated charges of the heavy English horse could not break the circles. The archers from the forest of Selkirk did great execution, and for a time the Scots held their ground. The Scottish horsemen, however, commanded by feudal lords who were jealous of Wallace, retreated without striking a blow. Edward, at length, brought up his archers and slingers, who showered their arrows and stones so thickly on the Scottish circles, that gaps were made in them by which the heavy armed horsemen entered and committed terrible slaughter.

4. Wallace led off the remains of his army towards Stirling, which he set on fire as he was unable to hold it, and escaped northwards. In order to recover from the effects of his wound the English king stayed fifteen days at Stirling in the Dominican Convent, which had escaped the flames. Edward scoured the country northwards to Perth, and eastwards to St. Andrews, but could not find food to maintain his army. He was accordingly, notwithstanding his vic-

tory, compelled to lead his forces through Clydesdale and Annandale to Carlisle.

5. Wallace for several years after this is not much heard of, though he doubtless was actively employed in the service of his country. He resigned the Guardianship, and John Comyn of Badenoch, and John de Soulis were elected Guardians in his stead. There is evidence that renders it probable that Wallace went to France, and even to Rome to plead the cause of his country. France did support Scotland till 1303, and the pope sent a bull to the English king which the Archbishop of Canterbury, after many difficulties, delivered to him in the summer of 1300, at Caerlaverock, which he had shortly before taken. This castle for a considerable time defied the efforts of the whole English army to take it, and when, at length, it surrendered, the garrison was found to consist of only sixty men, whose lives the king spared, and ordered to each of them a new garment.

6. In the spring of 1303 an English army, which had been sent into Scotland in the autumn of the preceding year under the command of John de Segrave and Ralph the Cofferer, was attacked by Sir John Comyn, the Governor, and Sir Simon Frazer, as it lay in three divisions near *Roslin*. In the fight with the first division Segrave was wounded and taken captive. When the second division came up it was also worsted. The third division tried to retrieve the day, but it could only check the Scots so far as to admit of a disorderly retreat. Ralph the Cofferer was slain. The English left a considerable amount of booty behind them, which the Scots divided among themselves.

7. Immediately after this Edward marched to the north with a large army. He reached Edinburgh in the beginning of June, 1303. He afterwards pushed on as far as Kinloss in Moray. His progress was interrupted for twenty days at Brechin. Sir Thomas Maule, the commander of the castle, shut its gates against him. So confident was this brave knight in the strength of the castle walls, that in derision he wiped off them with a towel the dust caused by the stones thrown from the English engines. He was himself, however, struck and killed by one of these missiles, after which the castle surrendered.

8. Stirling Castle held out for a longer time. Towers were erected against it, and stones of two or three hundredweight were hurled at it from powerful engines constructed for the purpose. The cathedral churches of Brechin and St. Andrews were stripped of their leaden roofs that the lead might be made into weights for working the siege

engines. After three months of fierce attack and brave defence, the garrison were compelled by famine, rather than force, to surrender, when 140 men came forth and submitted themselves to the conquerors. Touched with a feeling of admiration for their bravery and endurance, Edward spared their lives, but sent them to English prisons.

9. Comyn and Soulis, the governors, Simon Frazer, and others who had professed to uphold the government of King John, had shortly before this capitulated, and had been received to mercy. To Wallace alone no pardon was offered. He must submit himself to the king's will and grace. As Wallace would not submit on any terms, his capture was now the chief object of the English king. A great price was set upon his head, and large rewards were offered to those who should discover or betray him. Sir John Menteith, Governor of Dumbarton Castle, found out his retreat at Royston, near Glasgow, and was enabled, through the treachery of his man Jack Short, to capture him, and deliver him up to the English. He was carried to London, and conveyed with much pomp to Westminster Hall, where he was accused of treason, and impeached as a traitor. A crown of laurel was in mockery placed on his head, because it was said that he had boasted that he would wear a crown in that hall. He repelled the charge of treason on the ground that he had never sworn fealty to Edward. He was, however, condemned to death on the 3d of August, 1305. He was dragged at the tails of horses to a high gallows in Smithfield and hanged, but not to death. While he was yet breathing his bowels were taken out and burned before his face. His head was cut off and placed on London Bridge. His limbs were suspended at Berwick, Newcastle, Perth, and Aberdeen. Edward thought by this means to strike such terror into the hearts of all Scotsmen that no one would henceforth dare to resist him. But in this expectation, as we shall see, he was mistaken.

Summary.—After the battle of Stirling a famine came on the land. Wallace led an army across the Border, and plundered Cumberland and Westmoreland. He was, on his return, made Guardian of Scotland in name of King John. Edward was in Flanders when he heard of the defeat at Stirling. He hastened home, raised a great army, and entered Scotland in the summer of 1298. It was the policy of Wallace to clear the country before the invaders and avoid a battle. This policy nearly succeeded, for Edward, seeing his army in danger of starvation, had given the order for retreat. Two Scottish knights, however, informed him of Wallace's position. Edward *at once* marched to meet him, and defeated him at Falkirk. Edward,

after scouring the country, was compelled, by want of provisions, to retreat to Carlisle. In 1303 an English army, in three divisions, suffered three separate defeats at Roslin. After that Edward led an army through Scotland as far as Kinloss in Moray. All submitted to him but Wallace, who was, in 1305, betrayed by Sir John Menzies, conveyed to Westminster, condemned to death, and beheaded.

QUESTIONS.

1. What caused the Scots to cross the Border in 1297? To what position was Wallace raised? Who supported him? Who did not assist him?

2. Where was Edward when he heard of the disaster at Stirling? What did he do? When did he enter Scotland? How many men had he raised? Where was he delayed? What caused the delay? How many men did Wallace raise? What policy did he adopt? For what purpose? What did he resolve to do? How did Edward learn the position of Wallace?

3. What did Edward then do? What accident happened to Edward? What shows that Edward was anxious to meet Wallace? Why was Wallace unwilling to fight? How did Wallace arrange his men? What was the effect of this arrangement? What body of men did great execution? How did the Scottish horsemen behave? What troops did Edward then bring up? What was the result?

4. To what town did Wallace retreat? Why did he set it on fire? How long did Edward stay at Stirling? Why? What part of the country did Edward scour? Why did he retreat? Through what districts did he go?

5. When Wallace resigned the Guardianship who were elected in his stead? Where is it probable that Wallace went? For what purpose?

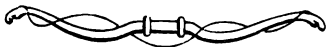
Till what time did France support Scotland? What did the pope do for Scotland? When and where was the Bull delivered to Edward? How many men had defended Caerlaverock Castle? How did Edward recognize their bravery?

6. Who commanded the army sent into Scotland in 1303? Where were they attacked? By whom? What was the result?

7. What did Edward now do? How far north did he go? Where was his progress interrupted? By whom? What castle was he in command of? What became of him?

8. What castle held out longer? What means did he adopt to take it? Whence did he get lead for the siege engines? What compelled the garrison to surrender? How many men formed the garrison? What did Edward do with them?

9. What had the leaders done shortly before this? How had he treated them? To whom was no pardon offered? What did Edward do to get Wallace into his power? Who captured him? Where? What did he do with him? Where was he taken? How was he treated there? On what ground did he repel the charge of treason? What was his fate? Where were his limbs sent? What did Edward think to effect by this?



CHAPTER XII.

KING ROBERT THE BRUCE, 1306-1315, 9 Years.

Revolt of Robert Bruce, his flight to Scotland, and murder of Comyn,	1306
Battle of Methven,	1306
The fight with the Comyns at Loch Awe,	1306
Bruce passes from Rathlin to Ayrshire, and takes Turnberry Castle,	1307
The Battle of Loudon Hill,	1307
Edward I. dies at Burgh-on-Sands,	1307
Siege of Stirling by Edward Bruce,	1313
Battle of Bannockburn,	1314

1. After the death of Wallace, Scotland seemed so completely subdued that Edward took steps to incorporate it with England, and Scotsmen of the highest rank in church and state were selected to represent their country in the English Parliament. Twelve years of war, however, had made such a union impracticable. The English king was preparing for a Parliament of the two nations to meet at Carlisle, and was intending by a conciliatory policy to reconcile the Scots to his rule, when one morning in the beginning of February, 1306, less than six months after the death of Wallace, it was announced that Robert Bruce had left the English court, and set off for Scotland.

2. Bruce had all along regarded himself as the rightful heir to the Scottish crown. He was seventeen years old when his grandfather had pleaded his claim against Baliol, and had, doubtless, ever since, cherished the hope of one day winning his kingdom. Policy made him swear fealty to the English king and even bear arms against his countrymen, but his vacillating conduct showed that he never was reconciled to spend his life in meek submission.

3. After the abdication of Baliol, the nearest heir to the throne was the **Red Comyn**. He was the son of Marjory, John Baliol's sister, and of that Comyn who had been a competitor with Bruce and Baliol for the crown. He and Bruce entered into an agreement by which Comyn was to receive Bruce's lands, and, in return, was to aid Bruce in obtaining the crown. This compact Comyn betrayed to Edward. The English king at the same time got into his hands a bond entered into between Bruce and Lamberton, bishop of St. Andrews, for mutual aid and protection. As Lamberton had been

a zealous supporter of Wallace, Edward might well be suspicious as to the aim of such a bond. Edward took the bishop to task about the document, and on the same day, when heated with wine, gave utterance to a threat which showed that Bruce's life was in danger. A friend of Bruce, the Earl of Gloucester, warned him by sending him a purse of money and a pair of spurs. Bruce fled accompanied by two followers. There was snow on the ground, and, to baffle any attempt to track them, they had their horses' shoes reversed, so that the footmarks might seem those of horses on their way to London. In their flight they met a messenger on his way to Edward, with more dangerous papers from Comyn. This messenger they slew, and Bruce thus possessed himself of the proofs of Comyn's treachery.

4. At Dumfries Bruce and Comyn met alone in the church of the Greyfriars, where Bruce charged Comyn with his treachery. "You lie," said Comyn, whereupon Bruce in his passion stabbed him with his dagger. Horrified at having shed blood in so sacred a place, he rushed forth and called "To horse." Lindsay and Kirkpatrick of Closeburn, two of his followers, seeing his agitation, asked the cause. "I doubt," said Bruce, "I have slain the Comyn." "Do you doubt," said Kirkpatrick, "I mak siccar." He accordingly ran into the church and slew the wounded man. Bruce and his party thereafter attacked the place where the English judges were holding an assize. They surrendered, and were driven across the Border.

5. The die was cast. Bruce must now win his kingdom or perish in the attempt. Quickly to every hut and hamlet as well as to every village and town sped the news that a successful attack had again been made upon the English invaders. Those of the English who were not protected by fortifications hurried out of the country. Bruce immediately made his own castle of Lochmaben his headquarters. This and other strong places of his, and especially his castle of Kildrummy in Aberdeenshire, were garrisoned and strengthened to resist the foe.

6. From Lochmaben he proceeded to Scone, and in the Chapel Royal there, on the 27th of March, 1306, six weeks after the slaughter of Comyn, he was crowned King of Scots. The Stone of Destiny was wanting, and a chaplet of gold had to serve for a crown. It was the right and privilege of the clan *Macduff* to place the crown on the heads of the Scottish kings at their coronation. The chief of the clan did not come forward to perform the ceremony for Bruce; but his sister, *Isabella*, the Countess of Buchan, hastened to Scone and discharged the duty.

7. Edward was at Winchester when he heard of these events. He was now an old man of sixty-five, but, though sick and bent by care, he at once took steps to put down the revolt. His rage knew no bounds. He issued an ordinance that all who were in arms against him should be pursued and taken dead or alive, that all who gave shelter to persons in arms should be hanged and beheaded, and that all who were concerned in the death of Comyn should be drawn and hanged. He got a bull from the pope authorizing the Archbishop of York and the Bishop of Carlisle to excommunicate Bruce by "Bell, Book, and Candle." Though unable to march with his army, he caused himself to be carried northwards in a litter. His movements were necessarily slow, but he sent Pembroke on before with an army, to crush the revolt before it could gather strength.

8. It was early in the summer of 1306 when he set out, but it was March, 1307, before he arrived at Carlisle. Pembroke meanwhile had marched rapidly to Scotland with his army and posted himself strongly at Perth. Bruce approached too near with his little band and was attacked and defeated at *Methren* on June 19th, 1306. It is said that on this occasion Bruce had challenged Pembroke, that Pembroke had replied that he would fight him on the morrow, and that the Scots, trusting to this promise, undid their armour and were preparing for rest when Pembroke suddenly attacked and routed them.

9. After this, the Scottish king with a few faithful followers had to take refuge in the Highlands. At Dalry, near Tyndrum, not far from Loch Awe, they were pursued by John of Lorn, a relation of the Comyn that was slain at Dumfries, who with a thousand followers hemmed in the king and his party and attacked them in a narrow defile. Bruce made a skilful retreat. He caused his followers to go on before him, while he now and again turned on his enemies and beat them back. Two brothers, on this occasion, who had sworn to take his life, watched with a comrade till the retreating party had to pass between the lake and its steep bank, where the path was so narrow that Bruce could not turn his horse. There they sprang upon the king. One seized the bridle and was instantly cut down. Another got his hands between the stirrup and the boot and tried by heaving up the king's foot to unhorse him. A third leaped up behind and grasped the king to assist in unhorsing him. Bruce stood straight up in his stirrups, and twisting himself round, cleft the skull of the Highlander behind him and then cut down the other who was dragging at his stirrup.

10. As the winter was approaching, Bruce sent his queen and her ladies under charge of his brother, Nigel, to his castle of Kildrummy, while he, with Sir James Douglas and other followers, made for the western coast, till they reached the headland of Cantyre, whence they sailed to the Isle of Rathlin, off the coast of Ireland. Here Bruce spent the winter of 1306-1307.

11. During his absence his brother Nigel and other friends, who aided him in the defence of Kildrummy, were forced to surrender. They were sent in chains to Berwick and hanged. The queen and her daughter, Marjory, who had taken refuge in the sanctuary of St. Duthac, in Ross-shire, were dragged thence by the Earl of Ross and sent to an English prison. Two sisters of Bruce were also imprisoned.

12. The Countess of Buchan was exposed to the scorn or the pity of passers-by, in a cage suspended from one of the outer turrets of the walls of Berwick.

13. Bruce had so effectually concealed himself in Rathlin that many supposed he was dead; but in the spring of 1307 he passed over to Arran, and thence to Carrick, where he took from the English his own castle of Turnberry. A strong English force made him, however, take refuge in the mountainous district of Ayrshire. There he was pursued by the men of Galloway, against two hundred of whom he defended himself in a narrow pass at a ford, and killed many of them before the noise of his followers, coming to his rescue, caused them to retreat. Pembroke and John of Lorn also went in quest of him in the same district. On one occasion, when attacked by the English in front and by the men of Lorn in the rear, his little band dispersed and fled in small parties. Lorn, however, had a bloodhound which once belonged to the king. This animal followed his track by scent until the king and his companion waded down a running stream, and thus were enabled to retreat in safety, and reach the place where at parting he had agreed to meet his followers. That very night he surprised the advanced post of the English and slew about a hundred of them.

14. Bruce soon reduced Carrick, Kyle, and Cunningham, and Pembroke retired to Carlisle, whence he returned with a fresh army of 3000 men, mostly horsemen. The Scottish king met him at Loudon Hill on May 10th, 1307. Bruce formed his men into squares and gallantly repulsed the heavy English cavalry, inflicting on them a total defeat. This was the beginning of his victorious career.

15. King Edward by this time had reached Carlisle, and thinking

his health improved he hung up his litter in the cathedral, and once more mounted his war-horse. He reached Burgh-on-the-Sands in sight of Scotland, and there died on the 7th of July, 1307. When near his end he gave orders that his flesh should be stripped from his bones, and that these should be carried before the English army till Scotland was subdued. His son did not carry out his wishes, but caused him to be buried in Westminster, and put this inscription on his tomb, "*Here lies the hammer of the Scots.*"

16. It was fortunate for Bruce and for Scotland that Edward I. died at this juncture, and left as his successor a prince who had neither the strong will nor the military talents of his father. Edward II., after marching as far as Cumnock, in Ayrshire, led back his army to England. Bruce now made rapid progress in driving out the English and in compelling the few Scottish nobles that were opposed to him to submit to his authority. Comyn, Earl of Buchan, made a stand against him, and met him at Inverury on the Don. Bruce, though sick at the time, mounted his war-horse, and scattered his enemies. He afterwards declared that the excitement of victory had restored his health.

17. The English garrisons were soon driven out of the chief strongholds. Randolph captured Edinburgh. Douglas took Roxburgh and his own castle of Douglas. Linlithgow was taken by a countryman named Bimnock. Bruce himself took the castles of Aberdeen and Perth. Dundee, Rutherglen, and Dumfries also fell into the hands of the Scots. The fortresses were generally destroyed, because Bruce could not spare men to garrison them.

18. In 1309, by the advice of the King of France, Edward II. agreed to a truce with the Scots. But the English king had soon to complain that they broke the truce. Peace was not desired by them so long as the English had a footing in Scotland. They made more than one raid into England, and on one occasion penetrated as far as Durham, where they did much mischief.

19. At last, in 1313, a crisis came. When all the other fortresses had fallen, Stirling Castle still held out. Edward Bruce, the king's brother, besieged it in the autumn of 1313, and Mowbray, the governor, fearing famine, prevailed on him to agree to a treaty, by which it was stipulated that the castle should be surrendered if not relieved by an English army before the 24th of June next year. King Robert was displeased when he heard of this agreement, but for the sake of his brother's honour resolved to abide by it.

20. When the English heard of the treaty they felt in honour

bound to relieve Stirling Castle. Edward II. roused himself to make a great effort for its relief and the reconquest of Scotland. He raised an army of 100,000 men. Of these 10,000 were cavalry splendidly mounted. With confident anticipations of victory, he marched into Scotland at the head of this mighty host. Bruce knew that he must meet them in front of Stirling Castle, and there accordingly, with great skill, he drew up his little army of 30,000 men. On the right his position was protected by the Bannock Burn. His front extended to the village of St. Ninians, and his left wing stretched away towards the town of Stirling. There was in this direction a level tract through which cavalry might pass to the gate of Stirling Castle. In this tract Bruce caused many rows of pits to be dug, in which were placed pointed stakes, and these pits were so covered that the ground seemed solid. On the 23d of June, 1314, the English army was seen advancing in splendid array. Countless banners were flying, and the burnished steel armour of thousands of horsemen glittered in the summer sun.

21. Bruce had taken up a position at a spot now called the Borestone, where his standard was planted, and whence he could scan the whole of the battle-ground. It was the duty of the king's nephew, Randolph, to protect the approach to Stirling, and this duty needed to be discharged with peculiar care, for if the English could relieve the castle, the primary object for which they came would have been accomplished. They might then have moved elsewhere, and not have been compelled to fight the Scots in their strong position.

22. When the English host was only two miles from the Scottish army Lord Clifford advanced with a detachment of 800 horsemen, and under cover of some gravelly knolls was, unseen by Randolph, stealthily trying to get past the left wing of the Scottish army so as to reach the castle. Bruce, however, from his higher position, saw the movement, pointed it out to Randolph, and rebuked him for his negligence, saying, "Oh! Randolph, a rose has fallen from your chaplet." Stung by the reproof, Randolph, by a rapid movement, soon placed a small band of 500 spearmen in the way of the English horsemen. Clifford's squadron, with spears in rest, charged them at full gallop, but Randolph's men, formed in a square, with spears pointing forth like the prickles of a hedgehog, firmly withstood the shock, killed many of the English horse, and unhorsed their riders. The English cavalry tried to surround the spearmen, and for a time it seemed as if Randolph's little band would be beaten. Douglas, with the reluctant consent of Bruce, was moving to the rescue, when

he saw that the spearmen were winning the day. He then checked his advance, that Randolph might have all the honour of victory, and soon the English horsemen were seen retreating in confusion to the main army.

23. King Robert, mounted on a small horse with his battle-axe in his hand, and distinguished by a circlet of gold above his steel helmet, was riding along in front of his own line, when Henry De Bohun, an English knight, armed at all points, and mounted on a heavy war-horse, galloped forward to attack him. De Bohun doubtless thought to kill the king, and by a single blow decide the fate of Scotland. Bruce, under the circumstances, might, with honour, have retired and avoided the encounter; but to the astonishment of all, he spurred his pony forward to meet his assailant. There was a moment of terrible suspense. On came the English knight in full career, but the king by a sudden movement parried the spear, and standing up in his stirrups, with one blow of his battle-axe cleft helmet of steel and skull in two, and laid his foe dead at his feet. The king was blamed by his followers for so rashly risking his own life and the safety of the army. To their censure he made no answer, but seemed like one mourning over his battle-axe, the shaft of which had been broken in two.

24. The defeat of the attempt to succour Stirling Castle, and the death of De Bohun, filled the Scots with hope, but sent a feeling of apprehension through the English army.

25. At daybreak, on the 24th of June, both armies prepared for battle. When the van of the English army had approached within bowshot of the Scots, the Abbot of Inchaffray, barefooted, and holding aloft a crucifix, was seen to walk slowly along the line, and as he passed the Scots knelt down and prayed for a moment. "See," cried Edward, "they are kneeling, they ask mercy." "They do," said Umfraville, a Scottish baron in the English service, "but it is from God, not from us. These men will win the day or die upon the field." "Be it so," said Edward, and commanded the charge to be sounded. The Scots were drawn up in squares, bristling with spears, to receive the attack of the heavy English cavalry. They were at first dreadfully galled by the English bowmen, but Bruce caused his small reserve of cavalry to disperse the archers. Then it was a contest between Scottish spearmen and English horsemen. Firm as a rock stood the squares of infantry against the repeated charges of the cavalry. Back from each onset on these squares, bristling with spear-points, recoiled the English battalions. The

knights, whose horses were stabbed and rendered furious by their wounds, were thrown from their saddles. At every attempt to break the Scottish squares the English lost more men and horses. The English lines began to waver, and the Scots were pressing forward with increasing vigour, when, on the crest of a hill that lay in



the rear of the Scottish army, there appeared a number of camp-followers who had gone up to see the battle, and who, with sheets elevated on poles to look like flags, and loud shouts, endeavoured to encourage their countrymen. These camp-followers or *Gillies* (from whom the hill on which they appeared was afterwards called the *Gillies' Hill*) were mistaken for a fresh army of Scots, and filled the

English with dismay. They broke into utter confusion. The flight became general, and the slaughter was terrible. The horsemen, who had avoided the pitted field in their advance, were driven into it in their retreat, and there they floundered and fell, and were either captured or slain. Thirty thousand Englishmen were left dead on the field. Of the Scots there fell not more than 4000. The English king, with 500 knights who rallied round him, fled at full gallop to Dunbar, where the Earl of March provided him with a fishing-boat in which he escaped to England.

26. An enormous amount of valuable booty, and many noble captives, fell into the hands of the Scots. The spoil, in the shape of money, armour, golden vessels, and costly vestments, has been valued at nearly three millions of our present money.

27. King Robert caused the dead to be reverently buried, and treated his captives with great kindness and courtesy. In exchange for the Earl of Hereford, who after the battle had taken refuge in Bothwell Castle, where he capitulated to Edward Bruce, the king got back his wife and daughter, who had been prisoners in England for eight years, his sister Christian, Wishart, Bishop of Glasgow, and the young Earl of Mar. Among the prisoners was a Carmelite friar whom Edward had brought to see the battle, and celebrate his anticipated victory. Him Bruce compelled as the price of his ransom to celebrate the victory of the Scots, which he did in a poem that is still preserved. On the day after the battle Mowbray delivered up Stirling Castle to the Scots, and entered into the service of the King of Scotland.

Summary.—After the death of Wallace Scotland seemed completely subdued, and Edward was taking steps to incorporate the two kingdoms when, in the beginning of 1306, Robert Bruce left the English court. He and Comyn had entered into an agreement for the delivery of Scotland, but Comyn betrayed the design to Edward. Bruce met Comyn at Dumfries, charged him with treachery, and stabbed him. Soon after he went to Scone, where he was crowned. Edward was in a rage when he heard of Bruce's doings. He raised an army and set out for Scotland. As he was old and infirm, and unable to march quickly, he sent Pembroke on before him with an army to put down the revolt. Pembroke defeated Bruce at Methven in June, 1306. The Scottish king and his followers took refuge in the Highlands, where they were pursued by the men of Lorn. Bruce then sent his queen and her ladies, under his brother Nigel, to Kildrumny, in Aberdeenshire, but this castle was taken by the

English during the winter. Meanwhile Bruce concealed himself in Rathlin, off the coast of Ireland. In the spring of 1307 he landed in Ayrshire, where, after taking his castle of Turnberry from Pembroke, he had to take refuge among the hills. After being pursued and hunted with a bloodhound, he raised an army and defeated Pembroke at Loudon Hill in May, 1307. Edward, meanwhile, was approaching Scotland, but he died at Burgh-on-Sands, leaving his son, Edward II., to carry out his designs. Edward II. had not the capacity of his father. He proceeded as far as Cumnock, in Ayrshire, and then led back his army to England. Bruce and his followers employed the next six years in driving the English out of the Scottish strongholds. Edward Bruce, in 1313, laid siege to Stirling Castle, the last important fortress unrecovered. Mowbray, the governor, entered into a treaty with him by which it was stipulated that the castle would be surrendered if it were not relieved before the 24th of June the next year. The English raised an army of 100,000 men to relieve Stirling. Bruce collected a force of 30,000 to oppose them. He posted his little army at Bannockburn, where, on the 24th of June, 1314, he completely defeated the English, and took immense spoil and many prisoners.

QUESTIONS.

1. After the death of Wallace what did Edward take steps to do? Who were selected to represent their country in the English Parliament? Where was the Union Parliament to meet? What policy did Edward intend to adopt? What news did he receive in February, 1306?

2. What had Bruce always regarded himself as? How old was he when his grandfather pleaded his claim? What had he done from policy?

3. Who was the nearest heir to the throne on the abdication of Baliol? What was the agreement between him and Bruce? How did Edward hear of this compact? What other bond fell into the hands of Edward? Why was Lamberton's aims suspected? How did Bruce get intimation of his danger? What did Bruce do? Whom did they meet in their flight? What was he carrying? What did they do?

4. Where did Bruce and Comyn meet? What did Bruce charge him with? What reply did Comyn make? What did Bruce do? What circum-

stance specially horrified Bruce? What did he exclaim when he rushed forth? Which of his followers asked the cause of his agitation? What did Bruce say? What did Kirkpatrick reply? and do? What became of the English judges?

5. What news quickly spread? What effect had the news on the English in Scotland? Where did Bruce fix his headquarters?

6. Where was Bruce crowned? When? What was wanting? What took the place of a crown? Who placed it on his head? To what clan did this right belong?

7. Where was Edward when he heard of these events? How old was he? What did he at once do? What ordinance did he at once issue? What special severity was to be shown to those concerned in the death of Comyn? What bull did he get from the pope? Unable to march with his army, what did he do?

8. Whom did Edward send in advance? For what purpose? Where

had Pembroke posted himself? Where was Bruce defeated? What is said to have been the cause of this defeat?

9. Where did Bruce take refuge? Who attacked him? Why was he an enemy of Bruce? Where did the attack take place? What plan of retreat did Bruce adopt? What incident occurred during the retreat? Where did the three attack him? Why was this place chosen? How did they attack him? What was the result?

10. Why did he send off the queen and her ladies? Where did he send them? Under whose charge? Where did Bruce go? Who accompanied him? How long did they stay there?

11. What became of Nigel Bruce? Where had the queen and her daughter Marjory taken refuge? Who made them prisoners?

12. What became of the Countess of Buchan?

13. When did Bruce leave Rathlin? Where did he go? What castle did he next attack? Where did he afterwards take refuge? By whom was he there pursued? Who went in search of him in the same district? What had Lorn brought with him to aid in the search? How did Bruce escape? What did Bruce do that same night?

14. What districts were soon reduced by Bruce? Where did Pembroke retire to? What did he bring back with him? Where did Bruce meet him? What was the result?

15. How far had Edward advanced by this time? Thinking his health improved what did he do? Where did he die? When dying what orders did he give? What did his son do? What inscription did he put on his father's tomb?

16. Why was it fortunate for Bruce that Edward I. died at this time? How far did Edward II. march into Scotland? In what did Bruce now make rapid progress? Which of the Scottish nobles still opposed him? Where did he meet Bruce? In what condition was Bruce? What effect had the excitement on him? What was the result of the battle?

17. What stronghold did Randolph capture? What did Douglas take? Who took Linlithgow? Which did Bruce himself take? Why did Bruce generally destroy the fortresses?

18. When was a truce agreed to? By whose advice? What had Edward soon to complain of? Why did they do so? How far south did they on one occasion penetrate?

19. What fortress of importance still held out? Who was besieging it? To what terms did he agree? Who was displeased at the treaty?

20. What did Edward II. rouse himself to do? How many men did he raise? Where had Bruce to meet them? How many men had he? What protected his right? In what direction did his left extend? Where did Bruce cause pits to be dug? What did he place in them? How were the pits concealed?

21. Where was Bruce's standard planted? What was Randolph's duty? Why was this a peculiarly important duty?

22. What did Lord Clifford attempt to do? Who saw the movement? What did he say to Randolph? What did Randolph do? How many men had Clifford? Randolph? What did Clifford's men attempt to do? How did Randolph resist this? Who was moving to the rescue? What was the result of the engagement?

23. What was Bruce doing when attacked by De Bohun? How was he known? How was he mounted and armed? How was De Bohun? What did De Bohun hope to do? What might Bruce with honour have done? What did he do? What happened? For what was Bruce blamed?

24. What effect was produced on the minds of both armies by these incidents?

25. When did the battle begin? What did the Scots do before engaging in battle? When Edward saw this what did he exclaim? What did Umfraville reply? What did Edward say and do? How were the Scots drawn up to receive the heavy English cavalry? By what were they at first much annoyed? How did Bruce put an end to this? What kind of contest did it now become? What did the cavalry try to do? With what result? What now appeared on the crest of the hill behind the Scottish army? What were they mistaken for by the English? What was the effect? What befel the horsemen in the retreat? How many Englishmen were left on the field? How

many Scots fell? What became of Edward? How did he reach England?

26. What was the value of the spoil?

27. Where had the Earl of Hereford taken refuge? To whom did he ca-

pitulate? For whom was he exchanged? For what purpose had Edward brought a Carmelite monk with him? What did Bruce compel him to do? What happened the day after the battle?

CHAPTER XIII.

KING ROBERT THE BRUCE, 1314-1329, 15 Years.

Edward Bruce goes to Ireland,	1315
He is crowned King of Ireland,	1316
He is killed at Dundalk,	1318
Bruce captures Berwick,	1318
The English try in vain to retake it,	1319
The Chapter of Mitton,	1319
The English again invade Scotland,	1322
The English king nearly captured at Biland Abbey,	1322
Death of Edward II.,	1327
Douglas and Randolph invade England,	1327
Douglas nearly captures Edward III.,	1327
Independence of Scotland acknowledged at York and ratified at Northampton,	1328
Death of Bruce,	1329

1. The victory of *Bannockburn* disheartened the English, and showed them the futility of their long-continued attempt to conquer Scotland. The Scots made frequent incursions into England, and penetrated as far as York, carrying the terror of their arms into the very heart of England. King Robert made pacific overtures to the King of England, but the latter would not acknowledge the independence of the Scots nor treat Bruce as a sovereign.

2. In 1315 Edward Bruce was invited by the chieftains of Ulster to assist them in driving the English out of Ireland, and to become their king. He landed with a force at Carrickfergus, overran Ulster, and was crowned in 1316, but was killed in a battle at Dundalk in 1318.

3. In 1318 Bruce laid siege to Berwick and recaptured it. The loss of this fortress was a great vexation to the English, and they made a determined effort to recover it. In 1319 an attack was made both by land and sea. A ship, provided with a boat hoisted half-mast high, from which a fall-bridge was to be let down on the wall to afford a passage from the vessel to the town, ran aground and was set on fire. An engine called a *sow*, which was a tower roofed with

strong planks, and filled with men, catapults, and battering-rams, was being moved up to the walls on wheels. From its lowest platform the walls might be undermined or battered down with rams. From its upper stories the walls might be cleared of defenders and access be obtained to the town. A stone hurled from an engine constructed by a Flemish engineer named Crabb, whom the Scots had employed to aid them in the defence, went crashing through the roof and different floors of the structure, and crushed to death or cruelly mangled the men within it.

4. Thus the attempt to take Berwick was baffled, and in order to repel a raid made by Douglas and Randolph, the siege was raised. These leaders, while the siege of Berwick was going on, had entered England with a force of 15,000 men, and had penetrated into the heart of Yorkshire before it was known by the English king that they had crossed the Border. When Edward heard in the camp at Berwick that they had defeated at Mitton an army consisting chiefly of churchmen raised by the Archbishop of York, leaving 3000 dead on the field, he hastened to repel the invaders; but their movements were too rapid for him, and they returned to their own country laden with plunder. From the number of priests killed at Mitton, the Scots jocularly called the victory they gained there "The Chapter of Mitton."

5. A truce was now made for two years. At its conclusion in 1322 the English again invaded Scotland. The Scots avoided a battle, but wasted the country through which the invaders passed. Though it was August, the English could find no food, and were compelled by starvation to return. The Scots hung on their rear, harassed and pursued them as far as Biland Abbey in Yorkshire, where they nearly captured the English king.

6. In 1323 a truce was again made which it was intended should last for thirteen years, but in 1327 Edward II. was murdered at Berkeley Castle in Gloucestershire, and Edward III., a boy of fifteen, was placed on the throne. The new king was advised not to renew the truce, except in such a shape as the King of Scots could not accept. Bruce required to be treated as a king, and the independence of his kingdom to be acknowledged. This the English government would not concede. The Scots, therefore, determined to bring the truce to an end. Vast preparations for war were made on both sides.

7. King Robert was at this time infirm from age and sickness and could not take the field himself; but Douglas and Randolph, at the head of 24,000 men mounted on small ponies, burdened with

nothing but a bag of oatmeal and a small plate of iron on which to toast cakes, rode into England, and laid waste the northern counties with fire and sword. An English force of 62,000 men, accompanied by the young king in person, went forth to oppose the Scots. With their heavy accoutrements and baggage they could never come up with the light-armed invaders. For a whole week they waited on the north side of the Tyne, at a ford where the Scots had crossed on their way southward, thinking that they must pass that way in their march northward. The English were about half-way between Carlisle and Newcastle, with no place nearer whence they could get supplies. Half famished with hunger and drenched with continual rain, they recrossed the Tyne and marched, they knew not whither, to seek their enemy. A reward of knighthood and 100 pounds a year was offered in the king's name to anyone who could tell where the Scottish army was.

8. After four days an English soldier, who had been taken prisoner, was sent by the Scots to claim the reward and to say that they had been waiting the English for a week. They found the Scots posted on high rocky ground with the river Wear in front of them. They challenged their enemy to come down and fight on level ground, but the Scots said they were plundering at their will the dominions of the King of England, and if he was offended, let him come and punish them. The English proceeded to blockade them and starve them out, but on the fourth day they had disappeared, and it was found they had moved off to a position which suited them better. The blockade again began, but on the first night Douglas with 200 followers broke into their camp, penetrated to the royal tent, and after nearly capturing the young king fought his way out again and reached the Scottish camp with little loss. For eighteen days the English waited, expecting that famine would compel the Scots either to submit or fight, but on the morning of the nineteenth day the Scots had again disappeared and were many miles away before they were missed. The English gave up the pursuit in despair, and their army had to be disbanded. The Scots on reaching home prepared for another expedition into England, and began to besiege Norham.

9. The English were now glad to treat with the Scots on such terms as they would listen to. A truce was adjusted, and at a parliament held at York in January, 1328, a document was prepared, in which the King of England declared for himself and his heirs that the kingdom of Scotland shall remain for ever to the great

prince, Lord Robert by the grace of God *illustrious King of Scotland*, and that Scotland shall be separated from the kingdom of England, and from all claims of subjection or vassalage. The treaty which followed the resolution contained in this document, was concluded at Edinburgh in March, and ratified by the English Parliament at Northampton in April, 1328. It is known as the *Treaty of Northampton*. By this treaty the independence of Scotland was acknowledged, peace was established, and provision was made for the marriage of the young prince, **David** of Scotland, to Joanna, sister of the King of England.

10. King Robert had now accomplished the great object for which he had struggled and fought so long. A year later, on the 7th of June, 1329, he died at Cardross, near Dumbarton, and was buried in the Abbey of Dunfermline. In his times of trial he had vowed, that if God gave him opportunity he would carry his arms against the infidels in the Holy Land. On his death-bed he charged the good Lord James Douglas to carry his heart to Jerusalem and bury it there.

11. Douglas set out with the heart in a silver casket, but, while on his way, he gave assistance to the King of Castile in Spain, against the Moors of Granada, and was killed in battle in 1330. When he saw himself surrounded by the Moors, he flung the casket before him, exclaiming, "Onward as thou wert wont, noble heart! Douglas will follow thee." The heart of Bruce was recovered beside the body of Douglas, brought back to Scotland, and deposited in the church of Melrose Abbey.

Summary.—Though the victory at Bannockburn showed the English that Scotland could not be conquered, there was for some time no peace between the countries, because Edward II. refused to acknowledge the independence of Scotland. In 1315 Edward Bruce went to assist the Irish in driving the English out of their country. He was crowned King of Ireland, but was killed in the battle of Dundalk in 1318. In the same year Bruce took Berwick, which the English made great but vain efforts to recapture. While the siege was going on Douglas and Randolph penetrated into the heart of Yorkshire, and at Mitton defeated an army raised by the Archbishop of York. When Edward heard of this he raised the siege of Berwick, and went to repel the invaders; but the Scots eluded him and got home laden with plunder. After a truce of two years the English invaded Scotland in 1322. By avoiding a battle and laying waste the country before the invaders, the Scots compelled the Eng-

lish to retreat. Next year a truce was made for seven years, but after the death of Edward II., in 1327, the young king, Edward III., was advised not to renew it, and both nations prepared for war. Douglas and Randolph invaded England with 24,000 men. An English force of 62,000 went to oppose them. The Scots plundered the country, and moved so rapidly from place to place that the English could not come up with them. On one occasion Douglas broke into the enemy's camp and nearly captured the young king. After this the independence of Scotland was formally acknowledged by the Treaty of Northampton in 1328. Robert Bruce died at Cardross in the following year.

QUESTIONS.

1. What effect had the victory of Bannockburn on the English? What did it show them? How did England now suffer? How far did the Scots penetrate? What kind of overtures did Bruce make to Edward? How were they received?

2. To what country was Edward Bruce invited? By whom? For what purpose? Where did he land? What success had he? Where was he killed? When?

3. To what important town did Bruce lay siege in 1318? With what result? What did the English determine to do? How was the attack made? What plan was adopted to get from a ship upon the walls? What became of this vessel? What was a *sow*? What could be done from its lowest platform? From its upper stories? What happened to the sow?

4. What made the English raise the siege? How many men had Douglas and Randolph with them? Where were they before the English king knew? Whom had they defeated at Mitton? What did Edward then do? How was Edward baffled? What did the Scots call this victory? Why?

5. How long was the truce now made to last? What did the English do on the conclusion of the truce? What did the Scots do? What compelled the English to retreat? How did the Scots harass them? How far did they follow them? Whom did they nearly capture?

6. When was a new truce made? How long was it intended to last?

What became of Edward? When? Where? Who succeeded him? What advice did the new king receive regarding the truce? What did Bruce require? What was the result?

7. What prevented Bruce from taking the field in person? Who took the command? How many men had they? How were they mounted? What did they carry with them? How did they act when they entered the northern counties? What force was sent against them? How were they accounted? What was the result of this? Where did the English wait for the Scots? Whence did the English draw their supplies? In what condition were they? For what was a reward offered?

8. How long was it before the English received information? Who brought it? Who had sent him? What message did he bring? Where did they find the Scots? What challenge was sent by the English? What answer did the Scots return? What did the English proceed to do? What did they discover on the fourth day? When discovered what did the English do? What did Douglas do the first night? Whom did he nearly capture? How long did the English blockade the Scots? What did they expect? What did they discover at the end of that time? What did the English now do?

9. When was another truce entered on? Where did the English Parliament meet? What were the terms of the treaty then prepared? Where was it concluded? By what name is this treaty known? What mar-

riage was one of the results of this treaty?

10. Where did Bruce die? Where was he buried? What had he vowed in his days of trial? On his death-bed what charge did he give Douglas?

11. Whom did Douglas assist while on his way to Jerusalem? What did he do when surrounded by the Moors? What did he exclaim? What happened to him? Where was Bruce's heart buried?

CHAPTER XIV.

DAVID II., 1329-1370, 41 Years.

David II. crowned at Scone,	1331
Randolph, the Regent, dies,	1332
Battle of Dupplin—David and his queen sent to France,	1332
Battle of Halidon Hill, and recovery of Berwick by the English,	1333
The Scots, under Sir Andrew Moray, recover many fortresses,	1337
Black Agnes defends Dunbar Castle,	1339
Return of David from France,	1341
Battle of Neville's Cross—Capture of David,	1346
Release of the Scottish king,	1357
Queen Joanna dies,	1362
The king marries Margaret Logie,	1363
The king's proposal that Lionel, Duke of Clarence, should be his successor, rejected,	1363
Truce for fourteen years entered into,	1369
Death of David II.,	1370

1. David II. was but five years old when his father died in 1329. He was crowned at Scone in 1331, and anointed by the Bishop of St. Andrews. **Randolph** became *Regent*, and ruled with vigour and sagacity, but he died at Musselburgh in 1332, at a time when new troubles were coming upon the kingdom. **Donald, Earl of Mar**, a nephew of King Robert, succeeded him as Regent. Edward Baliol, the son of John Baliol, had come over from France, and been received as an honoured guest at the court of England. He put forward a claim to the crown of Scotland.

2. There were at this time many nobles both in Scotland and England who, before the war of Independence, had possessed estates in both countries. These nobles had during the war virtually lost their estates in the countries against which they had fought, and it was stipulated by the Treaty of Northampton that most of these should be restored. This stipulation was only partially complied with, and the disinherited barons were ready to rally round Baliol

when he claimed the crown, in the hope that through him they might recover what they regarded as their rightful inheritance.

3. Though the English king secretly favoured the pretensions of Baliol, he could not openly encourage an attempt to break the peace of Scotland on the Borders. Baliol and the disinherited barons were therefore compelled to make their attack on Scotland from the sea. They landed in Fifeshire in August, 1332, and though they numbered only 500 horsemen and 3000 foot, they defeated an army nearly ten times more numerous under the Regent Mar at *Dupplin*, near Forteviot. Baliol was thereafter crowned at Scone, and he acknowledged Edward III. as Lord Superior of Scotland.

4. The young king was sent to France for safety. Baliol's time of prosperity was brief. **Young Randolph**, who had been made regent in room of Mar, who was slain at Dupplin, surprised him at Annan, and compelled him, in sudden terror, half-naked to mount a horse and escape to England.

5. There were raids across the Border, and the English declared that the Scots had broken the peace of Northampton. Edward III. raised a great army and laid siege to Berwick. The Scots made a brave defence against an attack from the sea, but the siege was so hard pressed from the land side, that the garrison promised to surrender if not reinforced by 200 men before a certain day. The Scottish army had made a raid into England, thinking to draw off the English army from Berwick in pursuit of them, but the English could not thus be diverted from the siege. The Scots returned from England for the purpose of succouring Berwick, crossed the Tweed at a safe distance up the river, and found the English army strongly posted on a rising ground to the west of the town called *Halidon Hill*. The Scottish ranks were terribly thinned by the English archers when crossing a marsh, and on charging up the hill they were completely defeated. After this defeat Berwick surrendered, and Baliol having regained his power gave over to Edward the south of Scotland as far as the Forth, and reigned for a time as a *vassal king* in the north.

6. For three years after this there was much confused fighting. The disinherited lords quarrelled among themselves. Baliol frequently received aid from England, and Edward himself led an army as far as Aberdeen, but the Scots wasted the country before him and forced him to retire. In 1337 the Scots, under the regent, **Sir Andrew Murray of Bothwell**, recovered several fortresses, such as Dunnotar, Falkland, St. Andrews, and Bothwell.

7. In 1339 the English resolved to take Dunbar, which was held by the Earl of March for David Bruce. The earl himself was absent when Salisbury laid siege to it; but it was bravely defended by his mistress, Black Agnes, a daughter of the great Randolph. For five



Dunbar Castle.

months she defended the castle against every effort of the besiegers. When a stone from the English engines struck the parapet, she scornfully wiped the place with her napkin. When an engine, called a sow, was moved up close to the walls for the purpose of undermining them, she cried,

“Beware Montague,
Or farrow shall thy sow,”

and then caused a great stone to be let fall upon the top of it, which smashed in its roof. When the soldiers, crushed and mangled, were extricating themselves from its ruins and endeavouring to escape, she called out, “Behold what a litter of English pigs!” The castle was relieved from the sea, and Salisbury, foiled by this brave woman, withdrew his army. Early in 1339 Edward Baliol, finding his position uncomfortable in Scotland, returned to England.

8. The King of England and his son, the Black Prince, were at

this time, fortunately for Scotland, engaged in a war with France. This gave the Scots an opportunity, and before the end of 1339 they had got into their hands Perth, Cupar, and Stirling. In 1341 Edinburgh was recovered, and soon after, in the same year, David, having been an exile in France for nine years, set sail from France with his queen, and landed at Inverbervie on the 4th June, where he was received with joy by all classes of his subjects.

9. In 1346, while Edward III. was busy with the siege of Calais, David II., at the instigation of the French court, with whom the Scots were in alliance, assembled an army at Perth, and marched into England as far as Durham. The Archbishop of York, assisted by Henry Percy and Ralph Neville, called forth the array of the north of England to oppose the invasion. The two armies met near Durham on the 17th October and fought. The Scots suffered terribly from the English archers, and having no cavalry to disperse them as at Bannockburn, they were completely defeated. The Scottish king was taken prisoner. Four earls, two lords, the Archbishop of St. Andrews, and many others were captured. The slain were reckoned at 15,000. A cross was erected by Sir Ralph Neville to commemorate the victory, whence it was afterwards called "*the battle of Neville's Cross*." The English army crossed the Border and for a time held Tweeddale, Teviotdale, Annandale, and Galloway. King David was taken to London, conveyed through the city with great pomp, and imprisoned in the Tower.

10. In 1353 Edward invaded Scotland with an army of 80,000 men. He marched as far as the Firth of Forth, but the Scots had adopted their old policy of clearing the country of everything that could support an army. After committing great devastation he was compelled to retreat and disband his mighty host. King David, after having been a captive in England for eleven years, was released in 1357, on the Scottish Estates becoming bound to pay a ransom of 100,000 marks.

11. In 1362 Queen Joanna died, and, in the following year, David married a certain Margaret Logie, a woman of low birth, and thereby gave great offence to his haughty nobles. She exercised a great influence over him for a time, but at length they quarrelled and were divorced.

12. David II. had none of the high-minded patriotism of his father. He was frequently suspected of wishing to betray the independence of his country, and this suspicion was confirmed in 1363, when at a Parliament held at Scone he suggested that the Estates

should select Lionel, Duke of Clarence, the third son of Edward III., as his successor. The Estates rejected the proposal with indignation, declaring that they would have no Englishman to reign over them.

13. In 1369 a fourteen years' truce was made with England, after which David undertook an expedition to bring under more complete subjection the outlying districts of the Highlands and the Isles. John of the Isles met him at Inverness and promised submission. Soon after his return from the north David died at Edinburgh Castle in 1370, in the forty-seventh year of his age and the forty-second of his reign.

Summary.—David II., a boy of five years, succeeded his father in 1329, and was crowned at Scone in 1331. Randolph became regent, but he died in 1332, and was succeeded by Donald, Earl of Mar. Edward Baliol came from France and claimed the Scottish crown. Being joined by the disinherited barons, he landed in Fife in 1332, defeated the regent at Dupplin, was crowned at Scone, and acknowledged the King of England as his Lord Superior. King David was sent to France for safety. Young Randolph surprised Baliol at Annan, and compelled him to escape half-naked to England. Border raids gave the English a pretext for saying that the Scots had broken the Treaty of Northampton. Edward III. declared war, and laid siege to Berwick. The Scots tried to raise the siege by making a raid into England. When they saw that they were unsuccessful, they recrossed the Tweed and attacked the English at Halidon Hill, but were defeated. Berwick surrendered, and Baliol for a time regained his power. Dunbar was successfully defended by Black Agnes in 1339. The friends of King David gradually won back their strongholds, and drove Baliol from the country. David returned from France in 1341. He invaded England in 1346, was defeated at Neville's Cross and taken to London, where he remained a prisoner for eleven years. He was released in 1357. Queen Joanna died in 1362, and the next year the king married Margaret Logie, from whom he was afterwards divorced. In 1369 he made an expedition to the Highlands, and succeeded in bringing the Lord of the Isles to submission. On his return he died at Edinburgh in 1370.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Who succeeded Bruce? How old was he? Where was he crowned? When? Who became regent? How did he rule? When did he die? Where? Who succeeded him? What | relation was he to the king? Who put forward a claim to the throne?
2. Who were ready to rally round Baliol? How had they lost their estates? How did the Treaty of North- |
|---|---|

ampton not remedy this? What hope had they in Balliol?

3. Who secretly favoured Balliol? Why had Balliol and his followers to attack Scotland from the sea? Where did they land? When? How many men had Balliol? Where did they meet the king's army? Who commanded the Scots? What was the result? Where was Balliol crowned? What did he acknowledge?

4. Where was David sent? Why? Who was now made regent? What had become of Mar? Where did young Randolph surprise Balliol? What did this surprise compel him to do?

5. What gave the English an opportunity of declaring that the Scots had broken the Treaty of Northampton? What did Edward III. do? What engagement did the garrison of Berwick make? What did the Scots do to relieve Berwick? Failing in this, what did they do? Where did they find the English posted? What was the cause of the defeat of the Scots? On regaining power, what did Balliol do?

6. What was the condition of the country for three years? Who assisted Balliol? How far did Edward himself advance into Scotland? What forced him to retire? Who was regent in 1337? Name some of the fortresses he recovered.

7. Who held Dunbar for David? When did Salisbury lay siege to it?

Who defended it? How long? How was it relieved? When did Balliol leave Scotland?

8. How was Edward III. engaged at this time? What important places did the Scots recover? When was Edinburgh taken? When did David return? How long had he been in France? How was he received?

9. When did David invade England? At whose instigation? How far did he march? By whom was he opposed? Where did they meet? From what did the Scots suffer terribly? Why? What was the result? What became of David? Why has this been called the battle of Neville's Cross? What portion of Scotland did the English for a time hold?

10. When did Edward invade Scotland? How far did he proceed? What policy did the Scots adopt? With what result? How long was David a prisoner? What sum was fixed as his ransom?

11. Who was David's second wife? How did this marriage give offence to the nobles? What became of her?

12. What was David suspected of? When was this suspicion confirmed? What suggestion did he make? How was it received?

13. In 1369 what truce was made? What did David now undertake? For what purpose? Who made his submission? Where did David die? When? How old was he? How long had he reigned?

CHAPTER XV.

ROBERT II., 1370-1390, 20 Years.

Truce for two years adjusted,	1383
Sir John De Vienne's expedition to Scotland,	1385
Battle of Otterburn,	1388
Death of Robert II.,	1390

1. David II. having left no children, his nephew **Robert, the High Steward of Scotland**, in terms of a solemn Act of Settlement made by Robert Bruce and his Parliament in **1316**, succeeded to the throne. He was the only son of King Robert I.'s daughter, Marjory Bruce, who had married Walter, the High Steward of Scot-

land. At the time of his succession he was fifty-five years of age. He was the first of the Stuart line of sovereigns. He had been twice married. By his first wife, Elizabeth Mure, he had four sons and six daughters, and by his second wife, Euphemia Ross, he had two sons and four daughters. By an act passed in 1371 it was provided that his eldest son John should succeed him.

2. The troubles that afflicted the latter years of the reign of Edward III. of England, made the early part of Robert II.'s reign comparatively peaceful and uneventful. Edward III. died in 1377, but Richard II., his successor, having Wat Tyler's insurrection and other matters to deal with, left Scotland for a time unmolested. There was, however, a continual petty warfare on the Borders, and the Scots were gradually winning back the territory north of the Tweed which the English had occupied after the battle of Neville's Cross.

3. The English were anxious for a renewal of the truce, which had continued since 1369, and in 1383 a truce for two years was adjusted between France and England, in which Scotland was to be included; but before the ambassadors could communicate with the government of Scotland, the Earls of Northumberland and Nottingham crossed the Border with 2000 men-at-arms and 6000 bowmen, and slaughtered and burned as far as Edinburgh. Scarcely had they departed when a body of thirty French knights, who knew that the truce had not been communicated to Scotland, landed at Montrose and found their way to Perth, whence they sent two of their number to Edinburgh to inform the government that they wanted employment in fighting against the English. At the very same time the ambassadors sent with the terms of truce came to Edinburgh. The truce was agreed to by the king, but the Estates, embittered by the English raid, would not accept of it. They would have their revenge, and the French visitors were delighted to know that, though the King of Scots forbade, they should enjoy a raid into England.

4. With the keen enjoyment of knights fond of war, the Frenchmen soon saw 15,000 Scots mounted on their small horses ride across the Border. They entered Northumberland and pillaged and burned the lands of Lord Percy. They advanced further and returned through the estates of the Earl of Nottingham, doing much damage, and driving before them a valuable booty of cattle and prisoners. With these they reached home in safety. An ambassador was sent to London to make excuse for the raid, and to express the desire of the government of Scotland to be included in the truce. The in-

vasion by the earls was pleaded in extenuation, and the English government being anxious for peace sent back a peaceful answer.

5. When the thirty Frenchmen went home and told their countrymen what they had seen, and how easily Scotland might be made available for aiding them against England, the French government, instead of seeking a renewal of the truce on its expiry in 1385, fitted out an expedition to Scotland of 1000 horsemen and 1000 footmen, and sent with them as a present to the Scots 1000 stand of arms and armour, and 50,000 gold pieces. The command of the expedition was given to John de Vienne, admiral of France.

6. The arms and armour were very acceptable to the Scots, but they scarcely knew what to do with so many knights, accustomed to luxurious living and fine lodging. Edinburgh, which had then about 4000 houses, could not afford accommodation for them all, and they were scattered as far north as Fife and as far south as Kelso. England was resolved at this time to make a great effort to annex Scotland. The young king, Richard II., marched northward with an army of 70,000 men. The Scots were able to muster 30,000. The French were eager for battle, but Douglas took Vienne to the top of a hill, showed him the whole English army, and convinced him that in a contest with such a mighty host, victory was hopeless. The French expected that they would have to surrender, but Douglas let them understand that the Scots could defeat their enemies otherwise than in a pitched battle. He said the English might do their worst in Scotland, while he and they invaded England. They accordingly laid waste Cumberland and Westmoreland. The French said among themselves that they burned more in the bishoprics of Durham and Carlisle than the value of all the towns in Scotland. The English army had meanwhile marched to the Forth, finding little to destroy except the religious houses. Being in danger of starvation, the invaders had to go back to their own country. The Scots returned from England laden with booty. When the English army was gone, the inhabitants came back from the hills and glens with their cattle and effects, restored their houses with turf and a few beams of wood, and resumed their ordinary way of life.

7. The French were surprised at the sturdy independence of the common Scottish people, who would not allow themselves to be plundered and imposed upon like the French peasants. If the Frenchmen meddled with the Scotsmen's cows or crops, the Scots attacked and punished them. If they would not keep on the paths, but trampled down the corn they were sued for damages. The

Frenchmen were disgusted to find that in such a poor, beggarly country, the meanest inhabitants had civil rights which it was not safe to trample on. The Scots were glad when their troublesome allies left. They told them that they could defend their country themselves, and that they did not want them.

8. When the Scots got rid of their allies they resolved on a second raid into England. The expedition was planned at Aberdeen, and forces to the number of 50,000 were mustered at Southdean on the Jed, about 10 miles south of Jedburgh. The Scottish leaders concealed the project from the king, who was in favour of peace. From a spy captured at the place of muster, the Scots learned that the English intended to pass north by one side of the Border when the Scots passed south by the other. This information made the Scots determine to invade England both on the eastern and the western side of the Cheviot Hills. The main army accordingly entered England by Carlisle and doubtless plundered at its pleasure, but its doings were cast into the shade by the brilliant exploits of the 300 men-at-arms and the 2000 footmen whom Douglas led across the Tweed, and as far as the gates of Durham.

9. The Scots were returning laden with plunder when Sir Henry Percy, nicknamed *Hotspur*, and his brother Sir Ralph met them at Newcastle. In a skirmish which took place there, Douglas took Percy's pennon and triumphantly cried out that he would raise it on his castle of Dalkeith. Percy retorted with a vow that he should not take it out of Northumberland. Douglas said it would be found that night in front of his tent, and challenged Percy to come and take it. The Scots drew off by Rede Water and attacked without success the tower of *Otterburn*. There was a general desire among them to go home as fast as possible, but Douglas thought he was in honour bound to give Percy a chance of recovering his pennon. His authority prevailed, and the Scots intrenched themselves and undid their armour for rest.

10. When Percy heard where the Scots were, and that they numbered less than 3000, he sped on to Otterburn with 800 horsemen and 8000 footmen, and in the moonlight of August 19th, 1388, attacked the Scottish camp. The Scots were taken by surprise, but the camp followers and a few spearmen kept the enemy at bay till the men-at-arms were harnessed. Going quietly out by the rear, the Scots swept round and attacked the English in flank. The English by sheer force of numbers drove back the Scots at first, but Douglas, taking an axe in both hands entered the press and made

a way for himself in such a manner, that for a time none durst approach him. At length he was borne down and mortally wounded. He told his immediate followers to conceal his fall, to display his banner, and raise his battle-cry. This was done so heartily that the Scots broke the English ranks and gained a complete victory. Douglas breathed his last on the battle-field. Of the Scots, about one hundred were slain and two hundred made prisoners. Earl Percy was taken captive. The English lost 1040 in the battle-field. In the pursuit, 840 more were killed, and more than a thousand wounded. It was a chivalrous battle for the capture of a pennon; but for the practical ends of war it was useless bloodshed. This battle has been commemorated in the well-known ballad of *Cherly Chase*.

11. The Scots were in danger of being attacked after the battle by the Bishop of Durham, who came up with 10,000 men; but he, after inspecting the Scottish position, which had been further strengthened before his arrival, withdrew and allowed the Scots to retire unmolested. In 1389 a truce was made between England and France in which Scotland was included. It continued by renewals till 1399. This truce cheered the last days of the aged king, who died at his castle of Dundonald, near Irvine, in 1390.

Summary.—David II. died childless, and Robert Stewart, the only son of Walter the High Steward and Robert Bruce's daughter, Marjory, ascended the throne at the age of fifty-five. The English left Scotland unmolested during the early part of this king's reign, and allowed the Scots to win back those parts between the Forth and the Tweed which their enemies had occupied after the battle of Neville's Cross. Though Scotland was included in a truce between France and England in 1383, the truce was concealed from the Scots until the Earls of Northumberland and Nottingham had invaded Scotland and wasted the country as far as Edinburgh. The truce was then made known and accepted by the king; but the estates would not agree to it till they had their revenge. They led 15,000 men across the Border, pillaged the lands of the Lords Percy and Nottingham, and then accepted the truce. John de Vienne came from France in 1385 with arms and men to aid the Scots against Richard II., who had determined to annex Scotland. The Scots, to the surprise of the French admiral avoided a battle, but defeated their enemies by first clearing the country before them, and then invading England. They found their French allies troublesome, and were glad when they left the country. The Scots then

invaded England by both the eastern and western marches. Douglas led the army on the eastern side, and defeated the English at Otterburn, but was himself slain (1388). Robert II. died in 1390.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded David? What was his claim to the throne? How old was he? Of what line was he the first?

2. What made the early part of his reign peaceful? When did Edward III. die? Who succeeded him? How was Scotland for a time left unmolested? Where was there continual petty warfare? What territory were the Scots gradually recovering?

3. What were the English anxious for? What agreement was entered into between France and England? Who in the meantime invaded Scotland? How far did they proceed? What induced the French knights to visit Scotland? Where did they land? What message did they send to the Scottish government? Who reached Edinburgh at the same time? What had they been sent with? By whom was the truce accepted? What did the estates do? What was resolved on? How did the Frenchmen receive the news?

4. How many Scots entered Northumberland? Whose lands did they plunder? For what purpose was an ambassador sent to London? What was pled in extenuation of the raid?

5. What did the Frenchmen tell on their return to France? What did the French government do in 1385? Under whose command was the expedition placed?

6. What were the Scots glad to get? What had they to do to accommodate the knights? What had England resolved to do? Who accompanied the English army? What was the number of the English army? How many could the Scots muster? What was Vienne anxious for? How did Douglas

dissuade him? What did the French now expect? What did Douglas say? What did he accordingly do? What did the French say among themselves? What were the English meanwhile doing? What were the English compelled to do? What success had the Scots? What did the Scots do when the English were gone?

7. What surprised the French? What disgusted the French? What did the Scots at last tell the French?

8. When the French left what did the Scots resolve on? What number assembled for the expedition? Where did they assemble? Why was the project concealed from the king? What information did the Scots get from a prisoner? What plan did they therefore adopt? Who led the expedition by the eastern Border? How far did they penetrate?

9. By whom were they met at New-castle? What happened in a skirmish there? What did Douglas say? What did Percy reply? What was Douglas's answer? Where did the Scots intrench themselves?

10. How many men did Percy bring with him? Why had the spearmen and camp followers to keep the English at bay? How did the Scots attack the English? When the Scots were forced back, what did Douglas do? What became of him? What instruction did he give his immediate followers? What was the result? What important Englishman was made captive? In what ballad has this battle been commemorated?

11. Who came up too late to assist Percy? What led him to withdraw? When was a truce made? When did the king die? Where?



CHAPTER XVI.

ROBERT III., 1390-1406, 16 Years.

Wolf of Badenoch burns Elgin cathedral,	1391
Battle of Gasklune,	1392
Battle of the clans at Perth,	1396
First Scottish Dukes created,	1398
Henry IV. enters Scotland with an army,	1400
Battle of Homildon Hill,	1402
David, Duke of Rothesay, starved to death,	1402
Prince James captured by the English,	1405
Death of Robert III.,	1406

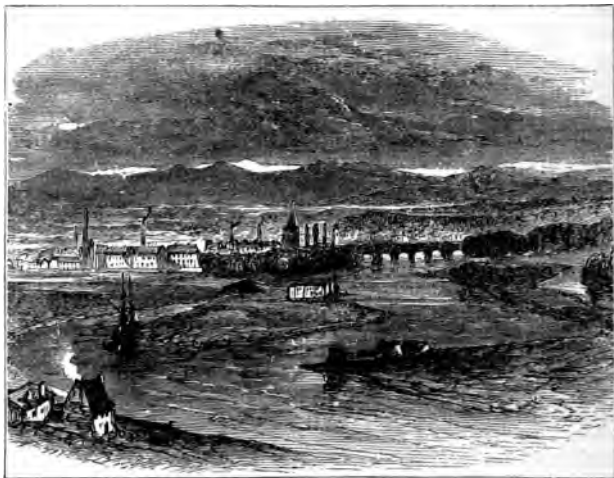
1. Robert II. was succeeded by his eldest son, **John**, but as the title "King John" was hateful to the people, as being associated with him who sold the national independence, it was resolved that he should assume the more popular name of Robert. He was accordingly crowned as **Robert III.** The nine years' truce with England made his reign for a time peaceful. There were, however, family quarrels among the nobles, and feuds among the Celtic races of the north and the west.

2. In the latter years of Robert II.'s reign the government had been largely intrusted to his sons, the Earls of Fife and Buchan. The latter, **Alexander Stewart**, was a monster of cruelty, who, by the people of the north over whom he exercised his tyranny, was called the "Wolf of Badenoch." This tyrant in the second year of his brother's reign, **1391**, in revenge of a quarrel with the Bishop of Moray, profaned and plundered the cathedral of Elgin, which he afterwards set on fire.

3. The Wolf of Badenoch had scarcely retired with his plunder when his natural son, **Duncan Stewart**, passed the mountains which separate the counties of Aberdeen and Forfar, and began to harry the country and slaughter the inhabitants. Sir Walter Ogilvie, sheriff of Angus, with Sir Patrick Gray and Sir David Lindsay, of Glenesk, collected a small force and attacked the *katerans*, as they were called, at Gasklune, **1392**, on the river Isla, but the Highlanders were victorious. In the fight Sir David Lindsay had pierced a Highlander through the body with his spear and pinned him to the ground, but the savage mountaineer, though in the agony of death, writhed himself up with the weapon in his body, struck Lindsay with his sword through stirrup and steel boot into the bone, after which he fell back dead. These excesses of a brother and nephew

of Robert III. called for immediate redress, but the government was so weak that they passed unheeded.

4. In 1396, two clans, called respectively the clan Kay and the clan Quhele, resolved or were induced to fight out their quarrel before the king and his nobles on the North Inch of Perth. There were thirty men on each side. Lists were staked off, and stands were erected for spectators, but when the sixty Highlanders entered the lists armed for mortal combat, the courage of one of the clan



Perth.

Quhele failed, and when the fight was about to begin he swam the Tay and fled. All was now at a stand, for, as the numbers were unequal, the fight could not go on. The king was about to break up the assembly, when an armourer of Perth called Henry Wynd, nicknamed the *Gow Chrom* or *Crooked Smith*, sprang within the barriers and offered to take the place of the deserter for a fee of half-a-mark and provision for life should he survive after having done his work well. His offer was accepted, and a dreadful combat ensued. The Highlanders, undefended by armour, fought with a ferocity which nothing could surpass, until only one of the clan *Kay* remained, while of the clan Quhele eleven, including the bold

armourer, were still able to wield their weapons; whereupon the king threw down his gage and awarded the victory to the clan Quhele.

5. The nobles, during the continuance of the truce, being deprived of the liberty to invade England, quarrelled with each other and did mischief to their unprotected neighbours. The king being infirm in body and weak in will, was unable to check the tyranny which the strong exercised over the weak. At length in 1398 the Estates in Parliament undertook to make law prevail, and to see justice done. Prince David, created Duke of Rothesay, was made **Regent** for three years with full powers to restrain and punish masterful misdoers, and especially to restrain "cursed men and heretics." The Earl of Fife, the king's brother, was created Duke of Albany, and was one of the council by whom the prince was to be guided in the administration of affairs. This is the first time that the title of *duke* appears in Scottish history.

6. On the termination of the truce in 1399, the Scottish borderers made a raid on England and carried off much spoil. The English borderers retaliated by an invasion of the Lowlands. In the same year Henry IV. became King of England, and as he was a man of a different stamp from Richard II., the aspect of affairs became more threatening for Scotland. In the year 1400, Henry raised a great army and marched as far as Leith and made a demand for homage, to which the Duke of Rothesay replied by a defiance and a challenge to fight him with one, two, or three hundred on each side. Rothesay defended Edinburgh Castle against the English, and Albany commanded a large army on Calder Moor a few miles distant. The English army for want of supplies dwindled away, and Henry IV. had to return to England with the conviction that the conquest of Scotland was a vain dream.

7. In 1402 the Scots invaded England under Douglas. He reached Durham as his father had done before the battle of Otterburn, and was returning to Scotland with a great amount of plunder when he was attacked by Hotspur and the Earl of March at *Homildon Hill* near Wooler. David, Duke of Rothesay, had been betrothed in 1399 to Elizabeth, the eldest daughter of March, but had married in 1400, Marjory, the daughter of Earl Douglas. This caused March to cast off his allegiance to the Scottish king, and he was now engaged with Hotspur in fighting against the Scots. The Scots had a good position at Homildon Hill, but the English bowmen thinned their ranks, and as Douglas neglected to charge them with cavalry, they

won the day. Douglas was taken prisoner, and a vast number of the Scots were slain.

8. At the time of this battle the Scots were much agitated by the death of the Duke of Rothesay. His conduct, especially since his marriage, had been somewhat scandalous, and Albany persuaded the king that he required to be put under restraint. He was seized and carried to Falkland, where he was thrown into a dungeon, whence



Falkland Palace, from an old drawing in the British Museum.

he never came out alive. It was given out that he died from an attack in the stomach, but public rumour loudly proclaimed that he had been starved to death. By his death Albany became governor. He was suspected of a desire to obtain the crown for himself on the death of his brother, but a son, James, and two daughters still stood in his way.

9. In 1403 Earl Percy raised an insurrection against Henry IV. He released Douglas and the other captives taken at Homildon Hill. Douglas collected a force and marched into England to aid Percy. They were defeated at the battle of *Shrewsbury*, in which Hotspur was killed and Douglas taken prisoner.

10. As Albany was suspected of having murdered the Duke of *Rothesay* and of having evil designs against the king's only remain-

ing son, James, a youth of fourteen, it was thought advisable to send the young prince to France to be out of harm's way, and to be educated in all knightly and royal accomplishments. He set sail from the Forth in March, 1405, but an English war vessel captured him off Flamborough Head. The prince was carried to London to the court of Henry IV., where he remained a prisoner for eighteen years. Albany was suspected of having given the English the information which led to his capture. King Robert was much affected by the fate of his sons, and in little more than a year after the capture of Prince James, he died at Rothesay in 1406.

Summary.—Robert II.'s eldest son, John, was crowned with the title of Robert III. There was peace with England during the early part of his reign, but quarrels at home among the nobles became more frequent. The king's brother, Alexander, called the "Wolf of Badenoch," quarrelled with the Bishop of Moray and burned the cathedral of Elgin. His natural son, Duncan Stewart, crossed the mountains and defeated the Lowland forces at Gasklune (1392). In 1396, the clan Kay and the clan Quhele, with thirty men on each side, fought out a quarrel in presence of the king, on the North Inch of Perth. The feuds of the nobles, whom the king was too weak to restrain, led to much suffering among the people. The Parliament, in order to make law prevail, gave the king's son, David, the title of Duke of Rothesay, and made him regent. The king's brother, the Earl of Fife, was created Duke of Albany, and appointed one of the king's advisers. In 1399, Henry IV. invaded Scotland, and led his army as far as Leith; but he had to return, convinced that the conquest of Scotland was impossible. In 1402, the Scots invaded England and penetrated as far as Durham, but they were defeated at Homildon Hill, where Douglas was taken prisoner by Percy. Albany had advised the king to put the Duke of Rothesay under restraint. The prince was confined in Falkland Palace, where he is said to have died of starvation. Albany was suspected of having procured Rothesay's death, and it was thought that the life of Prince James was not safe from his designs. James was sent off to France, but was captured on his way thither by an English warship. This so affected the king that he died in 1406.

QUESTIONS.

1. By whom was Robert II. succeeded? Why was his name changed? What made the beginning of his reign peaceful? Where were there disturbances within the country?

2. To whom had the government been largely intrusted in the latter part of the reign of Robert II.? What was the character of Alexander Stewart? By what name was he known?

How did he revenge himself on the Bishop of Moray?

3. Why was such an act passed unheeded?

4. What two clans fought before the king on the North Inch of Perth? How many were on each side? Which clan wanted one of the number? Who supplied the place? What was the result of the fight?

5. How did the nobles act during the truce? In what condition was the king? What did the Estates do to preserve order? What powers were given to the regent? Who was the Duke of Albany? Of what council was he a member? Who were the two first Dukes in Scottish history?

6. When did the truce with England expire? What did the Scottish borderers then do? What did the English borderers do? Who at this time became King of England? What did he do the following year? How far did he advance? What demand did he make? What reply did the Duke of Rothesay make? What place did Rothesay defend? Where was Albany? What had the English to do? Why?

7. Under whom was the invasion of England in 1402 made? How far south did he go? By whom was he attacked? Where? What was the result of the battle? What had Douglas neglected? Who was assisting Hotspur in this battle? What was the cause of this?

8. What event was agitating the country? Who had persuaded the king to put Rothesay under restraint? Why? Where was he imprisoned? What is said to have happened to him there? What position did Albany attain by the death of Rothesay? Of what desire was he suspected? What stood in his way?

9. Against whom did Percy move in 1403? Whom did he release? Who assisted him? Where did a battle take place? What was the result?

10. What was Albany suspected of? What was the name of the king's remaining son? Where was he sent? Why? When did he leave Scotland? What happened to him? Where was he carried? How long did he remain there? What was Albany suspected of in this case? Where did Robert III. die? When?

CHAPTER XVII.

JAMES I., 1406-1437, 31 Years.

John Reseby burned at Perth,	1408
Battle of Harlaw,	1411
St. Andrews' University founded,	1413
Death of the Regent Albany,	1419
The Scots in France win the battle of Baugé,	1421
James I. returns to Scotland,	1424
The king holds a Parliament at Inverness,	1427
Paul Crawar burned at St. Andrews,	1432
Marriage of the king's daughter to the Dauphin, afterwards Louis XI. of France,	1434
Death of James I.,	1437

1. On the death of Robert III. his son **James**, though a prisoner in England, was acknowledged king, while his uncle Albany continued to rule the kingdom. In **1406**, three years after the accession of James, there came to Scotland a refugee from persecution in England, John Reseby, a follower of Wycliffe. He was convicted of

forty heresies, one of which was denying that the pope was the vicar of Christ, and, being given over to the civil power, he was burned at Perth.

2. The "Lords of the Isles" had for long exercised a sort of independent rule in the north-west, and had even made treaties inimical to Scotland with the kings of England. The Earldom of Ross, which the Wolf of Badenoch had possessed in right of his wife, had now fallen to an heiress, who took the veil, and resigned the earldom to John, Earl of Buchan. Her aunt's husband, Donald, Lord of the Isles, claimed the earldom. The Wolf of Badenoch's natural son, who defeated the Lowlanders at Gasklune in 1392, had, in 1404, stormed the castle of Kildrummy, carried off and married its owner, the Countess of Mar, whose husband had died the year before. He thus had become the Earl of Mar. That the Lord of the Isles should obtain the Earldom of Ross was not desired by either Mar or the government, and Albany, the Regent, declared it to be the property of the Earl of Buchan. Donald, on the ground that he was treated with injustice, resolved on war, and, in 1411, led a host of 10,000 Highlanders through the northern mountains to Benochie, an outlying spur of the Grampians near the Don in Aberdeenshire. Thence descending he threatened that he would burn Aberdeen, and make a desert of the country as far as the Tay. Mar, who, since his marriage with a countess, had softened down the savage habits of his early life, collected an army composed of the bravest knights and gentlemen of Angus and Mearns, together with a troop of burgesses under Provost Davidson of Aberdeen, and met the Highlanders at *Harlaw*, near Inverury. The fight was severe and bloody. The Provost of Aberdeen and many other gentlemen were slain. For a time it seemed as if the Highlanders by force of numbers would annihilate their opponents, but the Lowland gentlemen held out against each successive shock, and Donald was forced to retreat. Lowland Scotland was thus saved from the horrors threatened by this Celtic invasion.

3. Not long after this, in 1413, the *first University* in Scotland was founded at *St. Andrews*. To Bishop Wardlaw belongs the credit of having established this nursery of free thought, and promoter of civilization and learning, among a comparatively barbarous people.

4. In 1419 Robert, Duke of Albany, died, aged eighty years, and was succeeded in the regency by his son Murdoch.

5. Except that he was held in captivity, James I. was well treated by both Henry IV., who died in 1413, and by his successor, Henry

V. The King of Scots had everything that England could give him in the way of learning and accomplishments, and he was admitted to intercourse with the great statesmen not only of England but also of France, where Henry had a court. He had also opportunities of seeing the practice of English politics, and the working of English law, and was thus the better fitted for becoming an able and enlightened ruler of his own people.

6. Henry V. of England had been so successful in his wars with France, that he had made himself not only nominally, but almost actually, king of that country. A party in France, however, still remained faithful to the Dauphin and the House of Valois, and cultivated the old alliance of France with Scotland. In 1419 arrangements were made for sending a Scottish force to France, and the English government gave orders to watch for and intercept them. Notwithstanding the watchfulness of the English, however, a Scottish force of 7000 men succeeded in landing in France in 1421, and under command of the Earl of Buchan they defeated the English at Baugé. This victory encouraged the French in their efforts to shake off the English yoke. The wrath of Henry V. against the Scots was terrible. He had the captive King of Scots with him, and under pretext that the Scots were fighting against their king, he gave orders that all of them that might be taken should be hanged as rebels. In the battle of Verneuil, which was fought two years after, 1424, the Scots were almost exterminated. The French, however, never forgot the great services which the Scots had rendered to them. Out of those who survived the slaughter of Verneuil the famous *Scots Guard* was formed in France, and a right of common citizenship was established between the two countries.

7. James of Scotland, while a captive in England, had fallen in love with Jane Beaufort, daughter of the Earl of Somerset, uncle of Henry V. The English king approved of his choice, for he thought that an alliance of the Scottish king with the English royal family would tend to make friendship between the two countries. It was agreed that the marriage should take place, and that James should be set at liberty on giving hostages to pay £40,000 for his maintenance during his captivity. Of this sum £10,000 was remitted as the queen's marriage portion. Henry V. died in 1422, but the treaty for the marriage and liberation of the King of Scots was carried out under the regency of the Duke of Bedford. James accordingly returned to Scotland with his queen, and was crowned at Scone on the 21st of May, 1424.

8. The Regent Albany, and his successor Murdoch, had, with the view of strengthening their own power, bestowed much of the crown property on the nobles. Though they oppressed the middle classes and quarrelled with each other, the regent dared not attempt to restrain them. The land had consequently been filled with violence.

9. Immediately after his coronation James set himself to reform the laws, and to cause them to be impartially administered. He caused the laws to be published in the Scots language, that no one might plead ignorance of them. A general survey and valuation of property was made. Owners of land were required to show the charters by which they held them. Enactments were made against begging and vagrancy, and the able-bodied were compelled to work. Weights and measures were regulated, and a standard of coinage was established. Provision was also made for the poor obtaining justice though unable to pay for it. The Parliament was assimilated as far as possible to that of England. The king also endeavoured to improve the military organization of his people. He made enactments with respect to the arms and armour of the various classes of the community, appointed *wapenshaws* to be held all over the country, and set up schools of archery in every parish.

10. Eight months after his accession, while the Parliament was sitting at Perth, he caused Duke Murdoch, with his two sons, and twenty-six of the leading nobles to be arrested. The late regent and his two sons were tried, found guilty, and executed on the heading hill of Stirling. The twenty-six nobles were set at liberty.

11. The king next determined to put an end to the independence assumed by Alexander of the Isles. In 1427 he held a Parliament at Inverness, to which he summoned Alexander and fifty chiefs. They came, were seized, and imprisoned in separate dungeons. A number of them were put to death. Alexander was spared on making submission; but when set free he again raised the standard of rebellion, collected an army, and burned Inverness. He then turned southward by Lochaber, intending to march to the Lowlands, but the king led an army up to the mountains to meet him. Alexander's forces, afraid to meet the king's troops, dispersed, and Alexander himself saw no hope of safety but in submission. The manner in which he made his submission was peculiar, and caused some surprise. While the court were at worship in the chapel of Holyrood on Easter day, he appeared before the high altar with no clothing but a linen sheet, and kneeling before the king presented him with a naked sword. The king spared his life, but sent him as a prisoner

to Tantallon Castle. Donald Baloch, a relation of the captive, took up his cause, levied an army, marched to Lochaber, and there, in 1431, defeated the Earl of Mar, the victor of Harlaw, who had been sent against him. The king raised an army, marched to Dunstaffnage in the Highlands, crushed all opposition, put Donald to flight, and received the submission of the chiefs. Donald fled to Ireland, where one of the chiefs killed him and sent his head to the king.

12. In 1432 Paul Crawar, a physician from Bohemia, was burned at St. Andrews for propagating the doctrines that had been taught and preached by John Huss and Jerome of Prague.

13. In 1434 the king's eldest daughter Margaret, though but thirteen years old, was sent to France and married to the Dauphin, afterwards Louis XI. This marriage, and the tenacity with which the Scots clung to the French alliance, gave offence to England. War was declared, and there were skirmishes on the Border, but no serious contest. The king, however, raised an army and began the siege of Roxburgh, which the English still held on the north side of the Border. When the siege had lasted fifteen days, the queen came to the camp with a message, which caused the king to disband his army and return to the interior of his kingdom, where there were serious matters requiring his attention.

14. James was popular with the common people, whose property, industry, and civil liberty were protected by his good laws and their impartial administration. But many of the nobles, whose excesses he had restrained and whose privileges he had curtailed, bore him no good-will. One of them, Robert Graham, had used strong expressions in Parliament about the encroachments of the king on the nobility, and denounced him as a tyrant. For this and other offences he was banished, and took refuge in the Highlands. We have seen with what severity the king had treated the Highlanders, and can therefore understand how gladly they would co-operate with Graham in seeking to take vengeance on him. They had the will, and only wanted the opportunity.

15. James gave them the chance they were watching for when he resolved to hold his Christmas festivities in the monastery of the Black Friars, at Perth, in the winter of 1436. When he was on his way to Perth a Highland woman met him at a ferry which he was about to cross, and cried, "My lord, the king, if you pass this water you will never return again alive." The king, being brave and fearless, heeded not the warning but went on. He spent a merry Christmas at Perth, and seemed to have no apprehension of danger; but

on the evening of the 20th of February, 1437, when the royal party had broken up, after a day spent in sport and feasting, the noise of three hundred Highlanders breaking into the monastery was heard. The king, wrapped in his dressing-gown, was lingering before the fire chatting with the queen and her ladies when the alarm was given. The first impulse of the king was to fasten the door, but the bar had been removed. A glance at the windows showed that they had been secured to prevent escape. The king told the women to hold the door as well as they could. He then seized the tongs, and using them as a lever, staved up a plank of the flooring and let himself down into a vault beneath. This vault had formerly an opening into the court of the convent by which he might have escaped; but only three days before he had ordered it to be built up, to prevent the tennis-balls with which he played from rolling into it. Meanwhile the queen and her ladies replaced the plank and endeavoured to keep the door shut. The great bolt had been removed, but Catherine Douglas thrust her arm through the staple. Her arm was soon broken, and the traitors rushed in with swords and daggers drawn. Not finding their victim in the apartment they thought he had escaped, and went elsewhere about the monastery to look for him. They soon came back, however, discovered that the floor had been newly broken, tore up the plank, and found the king. James begged for mercy, but Graham called him a cruel tyrant, and told him he should receive none. The king, though unarmed, grappled with them so fiercely, that the marks of his gripes remained on their throats till they were executed. The assassins soon finished their work. When the body was brought up to the light, sixteen wounds showed how fiercely the traitors had carried out their fell purpose. The murderers fled to the hills, but they were speedily captured and put to death with tortures, the details of which are too horrible to be related. Thus perished James I., in the forty-third year of his age, and thirty-first of his reign.

16. James I. was a brave and accomplished prince. He had a handsome face, and a strong and active body. He had not only all the martial accomplishments of his age, but he was also skilled in music and poetry. *The King's Quhair*, a love poem composed when he was a prisoner in England, and addressed to the Princess of Somerset, whom he afterwards married, is still admired for its tenderness and sweetness of expression. *Christ's Kirk on the Green*, in which a graphic account is given of a merry-making of country people at a rural fair, has been attributed to him. It is full of exquisite

humour and raillery, and may still be read with pleasure by those who take the trouble to master the quaint old language in which it is written. He did much to improve his country and civilize his people, and his death was deservedly lamented.

Summary.—James I., though a captive, was acknowledged King of Scotland, and Albany ruled as Regent. Donald, Lord of the Isles, having taken offence because the Earldom of Ross, to which he thought he had a right, was given to the Earl of Buchan, led 10,000 men through the mountains towards Inverury on the Dor but the Earl of Mar collected an army and defeated him at Harlaw (1311). Lowland Scotland was thus saved from the horrors of Celtic invasion. Two years later the University of St. Andrew was founded. Albany died in 1419, and his son Murdoch became Regent. James I. was well treated and highly educated during his captivity. He fell in love with Jane Beaufort, the daughter of the Earl of Somerset, uncle of Henry V. The King of England approved of James' choice. The marriage took place, and the Scottish king was set at liberty in 1424. When he returned to Scotland he passed many useful laws, and caused Duke Murdoch and his sons to be beheaded for their misgovernment. He led an army into the Highlands to put an end to the independence assumed by the Lords of the Isles. The king was beloved by the common people, but hated by some of the nobles. One of them, Robert Graham, formed a conspiracy against him, and in 1437 led 300 Highlanders to Perth, broke into the Blackfriars Monastery, and murdered him.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded Robert III.? Where was he? Who was governor of Scotland? What follower of Wycliffe took refuge in Scotland? In what year? What happened to him? When? For what?

2. What earldom had the Wolf of Badenoch held? What did the heiress do? Who claimed it? How had the Wolf of Badenoch's natural son become Earl of Mar? What decision did Albany give? What did Donald do? Who opposed him? Where did the armies meet? What was the result?

3. Which was the first university in Scotland? Who founded it?

4. When did Albany die? How old was he? Who succeeded him?

5. How was James treated in England? Mention some of the advantages

he received by his residence in England.

6. In what had Henry V. been very successful? What was the result of this success? What alliance did his opponents cultivate? For what were arrangements made between Scotland and France? How many men landed in France? Under whose command were they? What victory did they gain? What effect had this victory on the French? What of Henry? Whom had he with him in France? What orders did Henry give? Under what pretext? What happened to the Scots at Verneuil? When? What was the Scots' Guard? What right was then established between the two countries?

7. With whom had James of Scotland fallen in love while in England?

Who was she? What did Henry expect from the choice of James? What arrangement was now entered into? How much was the queen's marriage portion? When and where was James crowned?

8. How had Albany and his successors tried to strengthen their power? What shows the weakness of the regent?

9. What did James at once set himself to do? What did he do to make the laws known? What were owners of land compelled to do? What enactments were passed? What provision was made for the benefit of the poor? What means did he adopt to improve the military organization of the nation?

10. Who were arrested while the Parliament was sitting at Perth? Who were found guilty and executed?

11. Who were summoned to the Parliament at Inverness? What happened to them? Why was Alexander of the Isles spared? What did he do when set free? What steps did the king take? What became of Alexander's forces? Describe the manner in which Alexander made his submission. What became of him? Who took up his cause? What victory did he gain? Over whom? What did the king do? What became of Donald?

12. Who was Paul Crawar? Why was he burned? Where?

13. What new cause of offence was given to England? Where did skirmishes take place? What did the king do? What caused James to disband his army?

14. With whom was James popular? Why? Why did many of the nobles dislike him? Which of them had used strong expressions against James? What had he said? How was he punished? Where did he take refuge? Why would the Highlanders be ready to help Graham?

15. Where did James resolve to hold Christmas? What warning did he receive? Why did he not attend to it? Until what time was there no appearance of danger? How had the day been spent? When the party had broken up what noise alarmed the king? Where was he? What was his first idea? Why did he not do so? What prevented his escape? What did he do? What prevented his escape again? What were the queen and her ladies doing? What did Catherine Douglas do? What happened? Not finding the king what did they do? When they came back what did they discover? What did they do? What did Graham say when the king begged for mercy? What shows that James had struggled fiercely? How many wounds were found on the body of James? What became of his murderers? What was the king's age?

16. What was the personal appearance of James? What unusual accomplishments did he possess? What poem had he composed while a prisoner in England? To whom was it addressed? What other poem has been attributed to him? What does it give an account of? Why was his death lamented?

CHAPTER XVIII.

CONDITION of the COUNTRY during the FOURTEENTH and beginning of the FIFTEENTH CENTURIES.

1. The appearance of the country and the social condition of its inhabitants greatly changed during the eventful period, of about 150 years, that elapsed between the death of Alexander III. and the murder of James I. During the war of independence waged by Wallace and Bruce, the exile and captivity of David II., the feeble rule of Robert II., the weak administration of Robert III., and the selfish regency of the ambitious Albany, the royal authority had

been weakened, the power of the nobles had increased, and the oppression and poverty of the people had been intensified. Many of the vast forests, that at one time covered a large portion of the country, had been cut down, burned, and otherwise destroyed. These clearances were not made and allowed to remain for the sake of agriculture, but were often the result of war, wanton mischief, and neglect. Æneas Sylvius, who visited Scotland in the reign of James I., says, that coals were given to the poor at church doors by way of alms, the country being denuded of wood. An enactment of James I. is directed against "those defaulters who steal green wood or strip the trees of their bark under cover of the night."

2. Of the great castles in which the English invaders fortified themselves during the war of independence Bruce had, within six years after the death of Edward I., destroyed 137. But the greater and lesser barons afterwards built for themselves castles or strong battlemented peel-towers of various sizes, on precipices, on the banks of torrents, or in the midst of morasses. The walls of these towers were generally from six to ten feet thick. As they were often protected by a moat filled with water, and access to their iron gates was only obtained by crossing a drawbridge and passing under a portcullis, and as the rooms were vaulted and each story reached by a narrow staircase, they were capable of making a good defence.

3. The barons, in these castles and peel-towers, frequently acted as independent kings. They often had, clustered around their strongholds, the cottages of their vassals and dependants, over whom they had the power of life and death, and to whom their will was law. Here and there on their estates there were hamlets and villages, over whose inhabitants their authority was equally absolute. Theoretically, the barons owed duty and obedience to the king and his parliament, but practically, they generally did what seemed good to themselves. They made war upon each other at their pleasure. The followers of a great lord could scarcely ever be brought to justice for wrong doing, and bad men often assumed the badge of Douglas of Thrieve, or Lindsay of Finhaven, in order to rob, maltreat, and even murder, with impunity.

4. Though the vassals were held in thrall, and were often sold with the lands on which they lived, as if they were goods and chattels, yet they were generally faithful to their chief, and followed his banner in war, because they looked to him for support in their quarrels, and for protection against their powerful neighbours. In their stone vaulted halls the barons exercised a rude but abundant

hospitality, and their kinsmen and vassals were generally welcome to be fed at their tables.

5. Great nobles, like the Douglasses, lived in a style of almost regal magnificence. Their banquets were enlivened by the sounding of trumpets, the lays of minstrels, the feats of tumblers and jugglers, and the jests of fools. Hunting and hawking, tilts and tournaments, formed their chief outdoor amusements in time of peace. Their evenings were spent in playing at chess, reading *romans*, piping and harping, "and other honest solace." When the earl or knight left his castle for business or for war, his wife was invested with full authority to rule his vassals, conduct his affairs, and defend his stronghold.

6. The dwellings of the common people were generally worse than the meanest huts that may still be seen in the remotest glens of the Highlands. According to Froissart, the French auxiliaries, who came to help the Scots in 1385, shuddered at the poverty and barbarism of the country. The city of Edinburgh then consisted of about 4000 houses, built of wood, and covered with straw, which their owners readily set on fire and left on the approach of an enemy whom they were unable to resist. The same author tells us that the houses of the Borderers consisted of turf walls supported by four or five poles and covered with a roof of boughs, so that a man could erect a house of this kind in three days. When the English appeared in great force, the inhabitants unroofed their huts, and, carrying with them their household stuffs, drove their flocks and herds to the mountains and the recesses of the forests, where they remained till starvation compelled the enemy to withdraw. They then came forth from their retreats, and with a few stakes and green boughs restored their roofless houses. Our narrative of events shows that this was a common practice. Æneas Sylvius tells us that in the reign of James I. the houses of the Scottish towns, when they were of stone at all, were built without lime, and that in the villages the walls were of turf, while a cowhide supplied the place of a door.

7. Alongside of these wretched hovels of the poor were often to be seen the bishop's palace, the stately cathedral, or the magnificent abbey. The churchmen had acquired great wealth and enjoyed many privileges. They were exempt from tribute and war; and religious scruples or perhaps superstitious dread protected their property from the rapacity of the barons. The sees and abbeys were generally surrounded by rich lands, cultivated by the monks and the vassals of the church. The church lands enjoyed greater security, and were

better cultivated than the rest of the country. The monasteries gave hospitality to all comers, but the monks sometimes found their guests more numerous and troublesome than they desired.

8. The food of the common people was of the plainest description. Fish, flesh, and milk were generally abundant. The bread was made of barley or oats, and pease-bannocks were a dainty little inferior to wheaten bread. Salmon abounded in the rivers, and formed a chief article of export. Wine was costly, and the ale was weak and thin. The want of fresh vegetables caused skin diseases to be prevalent, a common form of which was leprosy. For people afflicted with this disease hospitals were common in all parts of the country.

9. A doublet, a cloak, and a kind of short trews formed the dress of the common people. A hat of basket-work, or a flat woollen bonnet covered the head. They all went barefooted except in war when the men wore shoes or brogues of untanned hides, whence they were called rough-footed Scots. The male and female costume of the nobility was much more costly, and it varied, as it does still with the change of fashion.

10. Amid their oppression and poverty the people were not without sources of amusement and times of enjoyment. They had meetings for the practice of martial exercises. They had also their local fairs on Sundays and saints' days, when they loved to engage in games of football and golf, running and leaping, wrestling and fencing, throwing the hammer and "*putting the stone*." In the pageantries, processions, and pilgrimages, practised and commanded by the church, the people combined what they believed to be religious duty with the pursuit of pleasure. Parties were frequently formed like Chaucer's Canterbury pilgrims, to make pilgrimages to the shrines of saints to see their bones and other sacred relics. They went long distances to visit such shrines as that of St. Duthac in Ross, St. Ninian at Whithorn, and Our Lady at Whitekirk in East Lothian. To these places, we are told by a contemporary, they went for the health of their bodies more than of their souls, and had often with them singers and bagpipers making more noise as they passed through towns and villages "than if the king came there with all his clarions and many other minstrels."

11. When law and order so little prevailed, the country swarmed with beggars and *sorners*. Troops of able-bodied mendicants roamed about extorting alms from all who were not strong enough to refuse them, and obtaining free quarters at the granges of farmers and at

abbeys. James I. passed laws against "sorning and masterful beggary;" but it is doubtful if they were effectively put in practice.

12. The love of national independence was a sentiment that animated almost all Scotsmen. They might fight and quarrel among themselves; but at the report of an English invasion they laid aside their feuds and suppressed their enmities till the Southern was compelled, by force of arms or starvation, to cross the Border.

13. It is wonderful that, amid so much "sturt and strife," literature was able to flourish at all. In the reign of David II., however, Barbour wrote his great poem *The Bruce*, and, about 1420, Wynton composed his *Cronykil of Scotland*. Fordun wrote his *Scotichronicon* about 1380, and it was continued by Walter Bower in the beginning of the next century. James I. composed the "King's Quhair," "Christ's Kirk of the Green," and "Peblis to the Play," works which abound in pathos and humour. The "Testament of Creseide," "Robin and Makyne," and other poems of great merit were written by Robert Henrysoun, schoolmaster of Dunfermline. There were also many songs among the people with which they lightened their labour and cheered their lowly lot; and ballads containing tales of love and war, whose words, transmitted by tradition, still thrill the heart with deepest emotion, but whose authors are unknown.

QUESTIONS.

1. What led to a change in the appearance and social condition of Scotland between the death of Alexander III. and the death of James I.? Whose power had been weakened? Whose had been increased? In what condition were the people? How had the forests been destroyed? What were often given as alms at the church doors? What law was made by James I. to preserve the forests?

2. How many castles had Bruce destroyed within six years after the death of Edward I.? What did the barons afterwards do? Where did they generally build their castles? How did they add to the strength of their castles?

3. How did the barons act in their castles? What often clustered round their castles? What power had they over their vassals? How did the barons act towards each other? Why could the vassals of a baron scarcely ever be brought to justice?

4. In what condition were the vas-

sals? Why were they generally faithful to their chief? To whom did the barons give abundant hospitality?

5. In what style did the higher barons live? How did they enliven their banquets? What were their outdoor amusements in time of peace? How did they spend their evenings? Who had charge during the baron's absence?

6. What kind of dwellings had the common people? How many houses were in Edinburgh in 1385? How were they built? What did the inhabitants do on the approach of an enemy whom they could not resist? What kind of houses had the Borderers? What did the Borderers do when the English appeared in force? What did they do when the enemy retired? Describe the stone houses in towns in the reign of James I.

7. What buildings were often found beside these hovels? What protected church buildings? By what were the abbeys generally surrounded? In

what condition were the lands of the church? To whom did the monasteries give hospitality?

8. What kind of food had the common people? What kind of food were generally abundant? What was bread made of? What did they do with the salmon not used at home? What was the quality of their ale? What was the effect of the want of fresh vegetables? What provision was made for lepers?

9. What was the dress of the common people? What kind of shoes did they wear in war? What name was given to the Scots from this circumstance? How were the nobility dressed? In what respect did the dressing of the nobility resemble the present day?

10. What had the people meetings for? When were their local fairs held? In what games did they then

engage? In what did they combine religious duty with pleasure? Name some of the favourite shrines. What had the pilgrims often with them?

11. What allowed beggars to cover the country? How did these able-bodied beggars secure alms? Where did they find lodging? Who passed a law to put them down?

12. What sentiment was general among the Scots? How did they act when a foreign enemy appeared?

13. When did Barbour live? What did he write? What work was Winton the author of? When? Who was the author of *Scotichronicon*? When? Who continued it? Mention some of James I.'s poems. In what do they abound? Who was Robert Henryson? Mention some of his productions. How did the people lighten their labour? By whom were these songs and ballads written?

CHAPTER XIX.

JAMES II., 1437-1460, 23 Years.

Accession of James II.,	1437
Douglas and his brother put to death,	1440
The king marries Mary, daughter of the Duke of Gueldres,	1449
The king kills Douglas in Stirling Castle,	1452
Death of James II.,	1460

1. When James I. was murdered, the heir to the Scottish crown was but six years old. Though the kings of Scotland had been wont to be crowned at Scone, it was thought safer, after the terrible tragedy at Perth, that the coronation of the young king should take place at Holyrood. He was accordingly crowned there as James II. During the king's minority the nobles again became troublesome. They defied the laws, and oppressed the poor; two of them in particular, Sir William Crichton, governor of Edinburgh Castle, and Sir Alexander Livingston, governor of Stirling, strove to increase their power and authority by securing the custody of the king's person, and ruling in his name.

2. The queen at first put herself and child under the protection of Crichton, in Edinburgh Castle. But Crichton raised her suspicions by his attempts to keep the young king away from her. She,

therefore, resolved to escape from him. She said that she was going on a pilgrimage to the shrine of Our Lady at Whitekirk, in East Lothian, concealed the king in her luggage, and, when the vessel that she pretended was to take her to East Lothian had got clear of Leith harbour, it was steered up the Forth, and she and her young charge were thus conveyed to Stirling, where they were gladly received by the governor of the castle, Sir Alexander Livingston. This made Livingston the rival of Crichton, and for a time gave him the ascendancy.

3. The Earl of Douglas, who had been appointed lieutenant of the kingdom, could have put down their rivalry; but he died in 1439, leaving as his successor his son William, a youth of sixteen years. In the same year, the queen, for the sake of protection, married "the Black Knight of Lorn."

4. Crichton was not content to let his rival keep possession of the king. Taking a force with him to Stirling, he captured the young king as he was taking his morning exercise in the royal park, and carried him back in triumph to Edinburgh. The two rivals after this came to terms, and Crichton was induced by certain rewards to let Livingston again have charge of the king.

5. The young Earl of Douglas became conspicuous for his haughtiness and his display of power. A thousand men-at-arms rode in his train. He neglected to give homage to the king, and held a sort of rival parliament within his own domains. Crichton and Livingston resolved that young Douglas should be put to death. With much show of kindness, he was invited to visit the young king in Edinburgh Castle. Unconscious of treachery he came, bringing his younger brother, David, with him. While they were being entertained there, a *black bull's head*, the signal of death, as they well knew, was placed upon the table. They leaped up in dismay, but they were seized by armed men, subjected to a mock trial, condemned, and immediately executed.

6. It is probable that the execution of the Douglasses was not a mere act of private vengeance on the part of Livingston and Crichton, but that it was dictated by motives of state policy. The House of Douglas had become so great a power in the state as to be almost beyond the control of the royal authority. The Douglasses were dear to the people on account of their patriotism. A Douglas had supported Wallace in his struggle for independence. The "Good Lord James" had fought valiantly along with Bruce throughout his whole career, and had died while endeavouring to carry out the king's

last request. The Douglas who fell in the arms of victory at Otterburn had added greatly to the military fame of his countrymen. When the Border counties were occupied by the English, it was always the Douglasses who were foremost in recovering them. They had also done good service against the English in France, and Archibald Douglas, the father of the murdered youths, had obtained many domains in that country, and the great Dukedom of Touraine. They had large estates in different parts of Scotland, and ruled with almost absolute sway two-thirds of the country south of the Forth. It was believed, moreover, that Archibald Douglas, the brother of the Good Lord James, had married Dornagilla, a sister of the Red Comyn, and daughter of Baliol's sister, and had by her a son, the Third Earl of Douglas; and that thus the Douglasses being descended from the elder daughter of David, Earl of Huntingdon, had a better claim to the crown than the Stewarts, who were descended from the younger daughter.

7. The Third Earl of Douglas was really the offspring of an illegitimate son of the Good Lord James, and his mother was not the fabled Dornagilla, but Beatrice, daughter of Sir David Lindsay of Crawford. The belief in their royal descent, however, was current at the beginning of the reign of James II. This belief, and conduct on the part of young Douglas scarcely compatible with the condition of a subject, may have led to the suspicion, that, if opportunity occurred, he might seek to found a new royal dynasty, and may have influenced Crichton and Livingston to put him and his brother to death.

8. The death of the Douglasses caused no commotion in the state. No attempt was made to avenge it. Their sister, "the Fair Maid of Galloway," could not inherit the Dukedom of Touraine, as it was a male fief. She got part of the Scottish estates, and her grand-uncle, "James the Fat," got the rest, together with the title. The Great House of Douglas was thus weakened for a time, but it soon again recovered much of its power and influence. "James the Fat" died in 1443, and was succeeded by his son, William, an able and ambitious man. He made friendship with Livingston, and got himself made lieutenant-general of the kingdom. He obtained a divorce from his wife, married the Fair Maid of Galloway, and thus reunited the Douglas estates, and made the House of Douglas as powerful in Scotland as ever.

9. In 1449 the young king married Mary, the daughter of the Duke of Gueldres. Many knights came from the Netherlands along

with the bride, and they were honoured with tournaments and other chivalrous entertainments. They noticed with wonder the power and haughty bearing of Douglas, who came to these martial displays with 5000 men at his back. As the king grew to man's estate, Douglas showed more and more that he meant to act in defiance of the royal authority, if not to destroy it altogether. He formed a league for mutual defence with Lindsay, the Earl of Crawford, called Earl Beardie, and sometimes, from the ferocity of his temper, the *Tiger* Earl, who, from his castle of Finhaven, ruled in the counties of Perth, Angus, and Mearns, with almost absolute sway, and with the Earl of Ross, who was equally powerful in the north of Scotland. He endeavoured to get as many as possible of the lesser nobility to act along with him in contemning the king's authority. He summoned them, especially those in the neighbourhood of his Castle of Thrieve, to attend a kind of parliament which he held there.

10. When Sir John Herries of Terregles retaliated upon some followers of Douglas, who had ravaged his lands, Douglas made him prisoner, and, contrary to a positive order from the king, caused him to be executed. Sir Patrick Thornton, a dependent of the House of Douglas, murdered Sir John Sandilands of Calder, a kinsman of the king, and was protected by the disloyal earl.

11. Maclellan, the tutor or guardian of the young Lord of Bomby, and ancestor of the Earls of Kirkcudbright, was summoned to attend one of the disloyal meetings of the vassals and retainers of the House of Douglas. Maclellan refused, was seized and taken to the Castle of Thrieve, situated on an island in the river Dee in Galloway. The king, at the urgent request of Maclellan's uncle, Sir Patrick Gray, the commander of the royal guard, wrote a letter to Douglas, entreating him as a favour to deliver the tutor of Bomby into the hands of his relative. Douglas had just risen from dinner when Sir Patrick arrived, and suspecting the occasion of his coming, refused to open the letter till Sir Patrick had dined also. While he was feasting Sir Patrick, he whispered to an attendant to have Maclellan immediately executed in the court-yard of the castle. When dinner was over, Douglas read the letter, thanked Sir Patrick for bringing it, and said he would comply instantly with the king's gracious command. The earl led his guest to the court-yard, and said, while his servants lifted a bloody cloth from the body of the murdered Maclellan, "There lies your sister's son, but he wants the head, the body is at your service." "My lord," said Gray, when he had mounted his horse, "if I live you shall pay for this day's work." He then

galloped off. Douglas gave orders to chase him, but thanks to his good horse, Gray, after a hot pursuit of nearly 60 miles, reached Edinburgh in safety.

12. Though the king had passed his majority and taken the government into his own hands, he had to dissemble his resentment, for the House of Douglas was too powerful to be openly quarrelled with. He put down the Livingstons, and took as his chief adviser the good and wise Bishop Kennedy of St. Andrews, by whom the Douglas league with Crawford and Ross is said to have been discovered.

13. The king, thinking that he could talk Douglas over, and induce him to break the bond, invited him to a personal conference at Stirling Castle in 1452. Douglas having got a "safe-conduct" from the king, promising that he would be safe to go to the court and return from it, arrived at Stirling on the 13th of January. The king, with Douglas and their respective friends, dined and supped with much cordiality and courtesy. After supper, James took Douglas into an inner chamber, and in the course of conversation urged him to give up the bond. Douglas haughtily refused, whereupon the king in a fit of passion exclaimed, "If you will not break the league, this shall," and stabbed him with his dagger. Sir Patrick Gray, who was at hand, glad of the opportunity of being avenged on Douglas for the murder of his nephew, came in and felled him with a pole-axe. His body was flung from the window into the court below. It was a foul deed, but unpremeditated.

14. Four brothers of Earl Douglas had come to Stirling with him. The eldest of these was at once acknowledged his successor in the earldom. They gathered what forces they could and surrounded the castle, but it was unassailable. They dragged the king's safe-conduct at a horse's tail through the streets of Stirling, pillaged the town, and, not thinking that enough, sent back Sir James Hamilton of Cadzow to burn it. For some time after, civil war raged from the Solway to the Moray Firth.

15. The Gordons had become a powerful family in Strathbogie, and the Laird of Strathbogie, "The Cock of the North," as he was called, was created Earl of Huntly. King James made him lieutenant-general of the kingdom. He attacked the Tiger Earl near Brechin, and defeated the Lindsays there on the 18th of May, 1452. The Tiger Earl, as he fled to Finhaven Castle, was heard to say, that he would readily abide seven years in hell, to have such a victory as Huntly had won that day. He soon afterwards made sub-

mission to the king and was forgiven. Huntly afterwards marched to the north and burned half the town of Elgin.

16. Thus the league was broken, but James, the successor of the murdered Earl Douglas, still defied the king, who marched through his territories and seized his castle, but came to terms with him. The quarrel was renewed. The royal army took Douglas's Castle of Abercorn. Douglas raised an army of 40,000 men, and was marching through Lanarkshire, when the Hamiltons refused to go against the king, and the army was broken up. The Earl of Angus, a younger branch of the House of Douglas, took the part of the king against his kinsman. Many of the Border families joined Angus, who, from the colour of his hair was called the *Red Douglas*. Angus defeated his kinsman's army at Arkinholm. Douglas had to flee to England. His lands were forfeited, and many of them came into the possession of Angus. Thus the *Red Douglas* was said to have put down the *Black*.

17. There was now rest in the land, and the king, acting under the council of Bishop Kennedy, passed acts for preventing the disposal of the crown estates by gifts to subjects, for the encouragement of industry, the repression of beggars, and the defence of the kingdom.

18. In 1460 James resolved while civil war was raging in England, to endeavour to drive the English out of Roxburgh and Berwick. He began with Roxburgh, and John of the Isles came to assist him. Cannon were then a novelty in Scotland. The king had in his siege train a monster gun, which James I. had bought in Flanders, and which never had been much used. It was made of bars of iron hooped together like the great gun called *Mons Meg*, which may still be seen in the castle of Edinburgh. The hoops were too wide, so that oaken wedges had to be driven between them and the bars to keep the latter close and tight. The king was curious to see the working of this cannon, and when it was fired, the discharge drove out the wedges, one of which killed him and wounded Angus who stood beside him. Thus fell King James II., in the thirtieth year of his age and twenty-third of his reign.

19. This king possessed neither the learning nor the accomplishments of his father, but he was upon the whole a good king and was much lamented by his subjects. From a red mark on one side of his face he has been called "James of the Fiery Face."

20. It is gratifying to think that amid the troubles of this reign, even while the king was struggling for the independence of his crown with the House of Douglas, the cause of learning was not lost

sight of. The foundation of *Glasgow University*, in 1450, shows, that amid the civil strife and fighting of that time, there were civilising influences at work.

Summary.—James II. was crowned at Holyrood in 1437. During his minority the country fell into disorder. Two of the nobles, Crichton and Livingston, strove for power and possession of the king. The queen and the young king were at first in Edinburgh Castle with Crichton, but the queen, with the child hid in her baggage, escaped to Stirling where Livingston was governor. The Earl of Douglas, who could have put down their rivalry, died in 1439. Crichton took a force to Stirling and recaptured the young king, after which he and Livingston came to terms and put to death the young Earl of Douglas and his brother David. Their sister, the Fair Maid of Galloway, got part of the estates; the rest and the title went to James the Fat, who died in 1443. His son, William, married the Fair Maid of Galloway (1449), and by uniting their estates made the House of Douglas as powerful as ever. Douglas made a league with the Earls of Crawford and Ross for mutual defence, and defied the king's authority, by executing Herries of Terregles and Maclellan, tutor of Bomby. Bishop Kennedy discovered the league of the three earls, and made it known to the king, who, thinking that he could induce Douglas to give it up, invited him to Stirling Castle and advised him to break the bond. When Douglas refused, the king stabbed him, and was assisted by his followers in putting him to death. The Earl of Huntly defeated the Earl of Crawford near Brechin, burned the town of Elgin, and thus helped to break the league. The new Earl of Douglas raised an army of 40,000 men, but the Hamiltons refused to join him in fighting against the king. The Earl of Angus, called the Red Douglas, sided with the king against his kinsman, and defeated his army at Arkinholm. Douglas fled to England, and Angus got his estates. The king, when civil war was raging in England, determined to take Roxburgh from the English, but was killed while watching the firing of a cannon in 1460.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded James I.? How old was he? Where was he crowned? Why? How did the nobles act during the king's minority? What two, in particular, strove to increase their power? By what means?

2. Under whose protection did the queen at first put herself and child? How were the queen's suspicions raised? How did she escape? Where did she go?

3. Who might have put down this

rivalry? When did he die? Who succeeded him? Whom did the queen marry?

4. How did Crichton regain possession of the young king? How was Crichton induced to restore the king to Livingston's keeping?

5. In what way did the young Douglas make himself conspicuous? What did he neglect to do? What did Crichton and Livingston resolve to do? What step did they take for this purpose? What happened at the feast?

6. By what was this act probably dictated? Why were the Douglasses dear to the people? Tell what you know of a Douglas in the time of Wallace. In the time of Bruce. At Otterburn. How had they shown their patriotism on the Border? In France? How much of the country south of the Forth was under their rule? What belief was common regarding them at this time?

7. What suspicion may have led Crichton and Livingston to put young Douglas and his brother to death?

8. Who got the Douglas estates? What effect had the division of the estates? Who succeeded James the Fat? What was his character? To what position was he raised? How did he reunite the Douglas estates?

9. Whom did James II. marry? Who came to Scotland with the bride? How were they entertained? What astonished them? What did Douglas more and more show? With whom did he form a league? What did he try to get the lesser nobles to do?

10. What did Douglas do to Herries of Terregles? What murderer did he protect?

11. Who refused to attend one of his disloyal meetings? Tell what followed. What did Sir Patrick Gray say when he had mounted his horse? How far was he pursued? What saved his life?

12. Why had the king to dissemble? Who now became the chief adviser of the king?

13. For what purpose did the king invite Douglas to Stirling? What had Douglas obtained from the king before visiting Stirling? After supper, where did James and Douglas go? What did the king urge him to do? What happened when Douglas refused? Who completed the murder? Why was he glad of the opportunity? What was done with the body?

14. How many of Douglas's brothers were in Stirling? What did they do? What was done with the safe conduct? What did they do after pillaging the town? In what portion of Scotland did civil war rage for some time after?

15. Who was the Cock of the North? To what rank was he raised? What did James then make him? Where did he defeat the Lindsays? When? What became of the Tiger Earl? How did he get forgiveness?

16. Who still defied the king? What did James do? When the quarrel was renewed, what did the royal army do? How many men did Douglas raise? Who refused to join him? What was the result? Which of the Douglasses took the king's side? What was Angus called? Where did Angus defeat Douglas? What became of Douglas? How was Angus rewarded?

17. When peace was restored, what acts were passed? Under whose advice?

18. What did James resolve in 1460 to do? What circumstance made this a favourable opportunity? With which did he begin? Who came to assist him? What novelty had James in his siege train? How was it made? What was necessary to keep the bars close? What was James curious to see? What happened? How old was James? How long had he reigned?

19. What name did he receive? From what circumstance?

20. What university was founded during this reign? When?



CHAPTER XX.

JAMES III., 1460-1488, 28 Years.

Accession of James III.	1460
Death of Bishop Kennedy.	1465
Orkney and Shetland given as a dowry to James III.	1469
Fall of the Bords.	1469
The king's brother, Mar. dies in Craigmillar.	1479
The king's favourites hanged.	1482
Death of the king at Sauchieburn.	1488

1. The death of King James II. caused some discouragement the troops that were besieging Roxburgh; but the widowed queen came with her little son, a boy of eight years, and exhorted them finish the work they had undertaken. The siege was pressed, and the castle was taken and destroyed. The young king was then conducted to Kelso, where he was crowned with great pomp and solemnity. The government was intrusted to Kennedy, Bishop of Andrews, and so long as he lived there was comparative peace and good government.

2. A civil war was at this time raging in England between the Houses of York and Lancaster. After the defeat of the Lancastrians at Towton in 1461, Henry VI. and his queen took refuge in Scotland, and either from gratitude to the Scots for their kind reception of them, or to deprive Edward IV. of a stronghold, they gave Berwick to the Scots.

3. Edward IV. was too busy openly to quarrel with Scotland, and in August, 1461, he appointed a commission to treat for peace with the King of Scots. Secretly, however, at the instigation of the banished Earl of Douglas, he had only two months before issued a commission to engage the Lord of the Isles and Donald Balloch in rebellion against their youthful sovereign. It was agreed that if Scotland should be conquered by the aid of the Lord of the Isles, he should become the Liege-man of Edward and be lord of Scotland north of the Forth, while Douglas, should he give effectual aid, would be lord of the territory south of the Forth. The Lord of the Isles raised an army in terms of this agreement, proclaimed himself King of the Hebrides, took the castle of Inverness, invaded Athole, and committed depredations as far south as Arran. If want of co-operation on the part of Douglas and the King of England this rising collapsed, nor was the true cause of it known in Scotland.

till 1474, when it was discovered that such a secret treaty had been made. The King of England was not in a position to make open claim of homage from the King of Scots, but he seems to have made preparations for doing so at a future time, for a great number of forged documents were at this time solemnly deposited in the English Treasury, setting forth that the English claims were just, and had been acknowledged by the Scots.

4. The early part of this reign is remarkable for the rapid rise of the Boyd family to power and influence. Robert Boyd had been, probably through the influence of Bishop Kennedy, created a peer of the realm. Alexander, the brother of this Lord Boyd, had been selected by the queen-mother and Kennedy to act as tutor to the young king in his martial exercises. He acquired great influence over the royal youth, and won his affections to his brother as well as to himself. The Boyds formed a faction, to which they secured the adherence of many of the Scottish nobility. Their intrigues were carried on during the mortal illness of Bishop Kennedy, and in contemplation of his death, which took place in 1465.

5. There was now no one wise enough or sufficiently powerful to check the ambitious schemes of the Boyds. In 1466, while the king sat in his Exchequer Court, then held in the palace of Linlithgow, Lord Boyd and his associates came and carried him off to Edinburgh. They afterwards got the king in Parliament to acknowledge that he had gone with them of his own freewill. Lord Boyd was formally pardoned by the three Estates, and made guardian of the king's person and governor of the royal fortresses. The Boyds now speedily acquired vast estates in all parts of Scotland, and Thomas, the guardian's eldest son, was, in 1467, created Earl of Arran, and married to the Princess Mary, the king's sister.

6. It will be remembered that the Western Islands had, after the battle of *Largs*, in 1263, been ceded by Norway to Scotland for a money rent of 100 merks. This sum had not been regularly paid, and Christian I., King of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, now asked payment of the arrears. Scotland could not readily pay the money, and the settlement of the matter was referred to Louis XI. of France. It was thought that as the King of Scots wanted a wife, Christian I. should give him his daughter, and by way of dowry cancel his claim on the Western Isles, and give besides the sum of £5000. As the King of Denmark could not pay this sum it was agreed that it should remain as a debt, and that Orkney and Shetland, which had hitherto formed part of the Norse king's dominions,

should be given to the Scottish king as a pledge for payment. The money was never paid, and since that period the islands of Orkney and Shetland have remained attached to the crown of Scotland, and been reckoned a part of the kingdom.

7. While Boyd, Earl of Arran, was absent in Denmark at the head of the embassy which negotiated the marriage and brought home the bride, a coalition of the Scottish nobles was formed against him, and the eyes of the king were opened to the ignominious tutelage in which he had been kept. Arran's wife, the king's sister, having become acquainted with what was going on, got herself conveyed to the fleet on its return before he landed, and warned him of his danger. He fled back to Denmark, taking his wife with him. After the king's marriage the Boyds were tried for high treason, and found guilty. Lord Boyd fled to England. His brother Alexander was executed in November, 1469, on the castle hill of Edinburgh. The domains of this powerful family were forfeited and annexed to the crown. At the command of the king the Princess Mary was forced to leave her husband and return to the Scottish court. A divorce was obtained, and she was given in marriage to Lord Hamilton. By this marriage the head of the House of Hamilton became the actual heir to the throne, or the next after a royal child down to the time of James VI., when there were more royal children than one.

8. In 1474 the English made advances towards establishing a lasting peace with Scotland. It was proposed to betroth the Princess Cecilia of England to the young Prince James of Scotland, and that 20,000 marks should be paid to the Scots as her dowry. This proposal was agreed to, and the payment of the dowry by annual instalments began at once.

9. The Scots, in the course of these negotiations with England, became acquainted with the treaty which the Lord of the Isles had made with King Edward. For this he was cited to appear before Parliament on a charge of treason. He did not appear at first, but afterwards submitted to the king. His Earldom of Ross was taken from him, but in 1476 he was created a Lord of Parliament and confirmed in his title of Lord of the Isles.

10. The reign of James III. had hitherto been prosperous. The occupation of Roxburgh and Berwick, the acquisition of Orkney and Shetland, the annexation of the Earldom of Ross to the crown, the establishment of the independence of the Scottish Church by the erection of St. Andrews into an archbishopric, and the marriage

treaty with England, were results of which the country had reason to be proud.

11. A rapid change now took place, which we scarcely know whether to ascribe to the circumstances of the times, or to defects in the character of the king. James, as he grew older, acquired refined tastes and studious habits, which were not calculated to win the respect of the ignorant but proud nobility, who regarded with contempt every pursuit that was not connected with military skill and martial daring. The king loved seclusion, and patronized architects, musicians, painters, astrologers, fencing-masters, and even skilled artisans. His brothers Albany and Mar, on the contrary, delighted in martial exercises and feudal pomp. This made the aristocracy look to the brothers as the chief support of the state, and alienated their minds from the sovereign. Hence it came about that the king treated his brothers as enemies. Mar was thrown into Craigmillar Castle, where he died. Rumour said he was murdered. Albany was committed to Edinburgh Castle, but he escaped to Dunbar. When Dunbar was besieged and taken, he fled to France. He came thence to England, and made a treasonable treaty with Edward IV., whereby, on his acknowledging the feudal supremacy of the crown of England over Scotland, he was to be made King of Scotland with the title of Alexander IV., and was, if possible, to take the place of his nephew, Prince James, and marry the Princess Cecilia.

12. Albany and the banished Earl of Douglas stirred up the English to hostilities against Scotland; while Louis, King of France, stimulated the Scots to make war on England. The King of Scots raised an army to oppose the attack which England threatened. A nuncio, however, came from the pope, and enjoined the two nations to stop their quarrel. The Scots obeyed and dispersed their force, but the English continued their raids, burning and destroying on the Scottish Border.

13. The Scots, in 1482, assembled another army of 50,000 on the Borough Muir, near Edinburgh. The king led this army through the Lammermuir Hills towards the Border as far as Lauder, where an incident took place which stopped its progress. The nobles were disgusted with the favour which the king showed to Cochrane, an architect, or as they contemptuously called him, a mason, whom he had made Earl of Mar. He was now with the army, and had charge of the artillery. The nobles held a secret council, and resolved to get rid of Cochrane and the king's other favourites. When they

were deliberating as to how they should best seize Cochrane, Lord Gray applied to them the fable of the mice who determined to hang a bell round the cat's neck to let them always know where she was, but were greatly perplexed when they came to consider which of them should tie on the bell. Before Gray had done speaking, Archibald, Earl of Angus, started up and cried out, "Delay not as to that, I'll bell the cat." From this speech he was ever afterwards called Archibald *Be'l the Cat*. At that moment a knock was heard at the door, and Cochrane entered. Angus pulled off a chain of gold that Cochrane had about his neck, and told him a rope would serve him better. They detained him till they sent armed men to the king's pavilion, who seized the other favourites, among whom were Rogers, a musician, Torphichen, a fencing-master, Hommel, a tailor, and Leonard, a shoemaker. A young man named Ramsay was spared at the intercession of the king. Cochrane and the rest were, without ceremony, hanged over Lauder Bridge. The march of the army southward was abandoned, and the king was lodged with apparent honour, but really as a prisoner, in the castle of Edinburgh.

14. Albany soon after came to Edinburgh and procured the freedom of his brother; but being suspected of designs against the independence of the kingdom, he left Scotland, went over to the English, and placed Dunbar Castle in English hands. He and Douglas made a raid into Scotland in 1484, but they were defeated. Albany escaped to France, Douglas was taken prisoner, but on his agreeing to spend the remainder of his days in Lindores his life was spared.

15. The English army, which the Scottish host that stopped at Lauder was designed to meet, being unopposed, took the town of Berwick. In 1485 Henry VII. became King of England. The truces were renewed, and England seemed sincerely to wish for peace. But a wide-spread confederacy was formed against James III. He was charged with surrounding himself with false counselors, who advised him to "the inbringing of Englishmen and the perpetual subjection of the realm."

16. The confederate forces gathered in the south. The king raised an army in the north, and drew towards Stirling. Shaw, the governor of the castle, refused the king admittance, and carried Prince James, a youth of sixteen, whose guardian he was, to the camp of the confederates. The two armies, each displaying a royal banner, met at *Sauchieburn*, near Bannockburn, in 1488. The royal forces made but little resistance to their enemies, and were defeated. The king fled on a spirited gray horse that had that day been given him

by Lord Lindsay. He had crossed the Bannock, and was passing Beaton's Mill, when the miller's wife, who had come out to draw water, being startled by the sudden appearance of an armed horseman, dropped her pitcher. The horse shied at this and threw the king. He was carried into the miller's house and laid on a bed. The king told who he was, and asked the miller's wife to get a priest to whom he might make his dying confession. The woman ran to the door calling for a priest to shrive the king. A man passing by said he was a priest, came in, and bending over the bed as if to do the priestly office to the dying man, stabbed him until he was dead. He then rushed out and vanished no one knew whither. Thus perished James III. at the age of thirty-six, in the twenty-eighth year of his reign.

Summary.—James III. was but eight years old when he was crowned at Kelso. The siege of Roxburgh was carried on with vigour, and the castle was taken. The Boyd family rose to great power in the beginning of this reign. So long as Bishop Kennedy lived there was peace and good government. After his death, in 1465, the Boyds obtained possession of the king, and Lord Boyd got himself made guardian of the kingdom. His son, Thomas, married the king's sister Mary, and was created Earl of Arran. The fall of the Boyds was as rapid as their rise. When Arran was absent in Denmark negotiating for the marriage of the king to the Princess of Denmark, a plot was formed against them. Lord Boyd fled to England, his brother Alexander was executed, the Princess Mary was forced to leave her husband, whom she had warned of his danger on his return, and with whom she had fled to Denmark. A divorce was procured, and she was given in marriage to Lord Hamilton. King James got with his bride Orkney and Shetland as a marriage portion. After this he became studious and fond of favourites, which displeased the nobles, and made them favour his brothers Mar and Albany, whom he came to regard as enemies. Mar was thrown into Craigmillar Castle, where he died, and Albany fled to France. The king led an army towards the Border in 1482, but the nobles stopped its progress at Lauder, where they hanged the favourites. They then went back to Edinburgh Castle with the king as a prisoner. Albany, however, procured his freedom. A party of the nobles suspected the king of intriguing with England for the subjection of Scotland. They raised an army against him, and defeated his forces at Sauchieburn, where he was killed in 1488.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded James II.? How old was he? What effect had the death of James II. on the army before Edinburgh? What did the queen do? What was the result? Where was James III. crowned? To whom was the government intrusted? In what condition was the country during his lifetime?

2. Where was civil war raging at this time? Between what houses? Where were the Lancastrians defeated? When? Who gave up Berwick to the Scots? What reasons are given for this?

3. Who was now King of England? Why did he avoid quarrelling with Scotland? How did he show his desire for peace? What had he been doing secretly against the King of Scotland? At whose instigation? How was Scotland to be divided when conquered? What did the Lord of the Isles do? What was the cause of the collapse of this insurrection? What shows that the King of England intended to claim homage from the King of Scotland?

4. What family rose rapidly in the early part of this reign? Who was the first peer in the family? What was his brother's name? What appointment at court did he receive? How did he use the influence thus acquired?

5. When did they carry off the king? What did they get him to acknowledge? What was Lord Boyd made? Whom did Lord Boyd's son Thomas marry? What title did he receive?

6. What yearly rent had Scotland promised for the Western Isles? Who demanded payment of the arrears? When Scotland could not pay, to whom was the matter referred? What was proposed? What were given as a pledge for the payment by Christian of the additional £5000? What have they ever since been considered?

7. Who was at the head of the embassy sent to Denmark? What coalition was formed during his absence? Who conveyed the intelligence to Boyd? How? What did he do? After the king's marriage for what were the Boyds tried? What became of

Lord Boyd? Of Alexander Boyd? Of the Princess Mary?

8. What advances were made by the English in 1474? What proposal was made and agreed to?

9. What secret treaty did the Scots learn the existence of during these negotiations? How was the Lord of the Isles punished? What was he afterwards created?

10. What results indicate that the reign of James had hitherto been prosperous?

11. How did James lose the respect of the nobility? Who were the king's brothers? What made the nobles respect them? What became of Mar? What rumour spread as to his fate? What became of Albany? With whom did he afterwards make a treasonable treaty? What was the object of the treaty?

12. Who joined Albany in stirring up hostility to Scotland? Who stirred up hostility to England? Who interfered to stop the quarrel? With what result?

13. When did the Scots again assemble an army? Where? How many men? How far did this army proceed? What disgusted the nobles? What did the nobles do? What story did Lord Gray tell? What did the Earl of Angus say? What name did he get from this answer? Who entered at that moment? What did Angus do? How did they secure the other favourites? Who were they? What did the nobles do to them? What became of the king?

14. Who soon after came to Edinburgh? What did he procure? What was he suspected of? What did he do? What did he and Douglas do in 1484? With what result? What became of Albany? Of Douglas?

15. What important town did the Scots at this time lose? What army should have prevented this? When did Henry VII. become King of England? What did the enemies of James charge him with?

16. Where did the confederate forces assemble? Where did the king raise an army? To what town did he approach? What important person was there? Whither did Shaw carry him?

Where did the two armies meet? When? What was the result? What became of the king? How was the king thrown from his horse? Whither was he carried? What did he ask the

millers wife to do? What did she do? What did the pretended priest do? What became of this man? How old was James? How long had he reigned?

CHAPTER XXI.

JAMES IV., 1488-1513, 25 Years.

Accession of James IV.,	1488
Perkin Warbeck comes to Scotland,	1495
Aberdeen University founded,	1494
The king marries Margaret, daughter of Henry VII.,	1502
Printing introduced into Scotland,	1505
Lord Howard defeats Sir Andrew Barton,	1512
Battle of Flodden,	1513

1. For some time after the battle of *Sauchieburn* it was not known what had become of James III. It was supposed that he had taken refuge with Sir Andrew Wood, a brave sea captain, whose ships were in the Forth; but, on inquiry, this was found not to be the case. The king's body, however, was afterwards found and interred with royal honours in the Abbey of Cambuskenneth.

2. The confederate barons used their victory with moderation. The great offices of state were transferred to the leaders, but a general amnesty was passed forgiving those that had taken arms against "the king that now is." Ramsay, the one favourite whose life had been spared at Lauder Bridge, and who had risen to be Earl of Bothwell, was charged with having gone on three separate embassies to treat with the King of England, for an attempt on the liberties of Scotland. For this, an act of forfeiture was passed against him, and he was stripped of his lands and power.

3. James IV. was crowned at Scone on the 26th of June, 1488, after which he proceeded to the palace of Stirling, where he took up his residence.

4. There was for a time great dissatisfaction among the people, because nothing had been done to discover and punish the murderer or murderers of the late king. The king himself had fits of remorse for the part he had been forced to take in the rebellion against his father, and as a sort of penance he is said to have worn a belt of iron, the weight of which he increased by adding a link to it every year. In 1489 the Earl of Lennox raised a force in the west to

avenge the death of James III., and Lord Forbes did the same in the north, but both risings were easily put down. In 1491 the Estates, to satisfy public feeling, offered a reward of 100 merks' worth of land to anyone who should reveal "the committers of the deed with their hands." This cautious language was doubtless used, lest the act of the Estates might come to be employed against those who had fought against the king. "The committers of the deed with their hands," however, were never found.

5. There was much dissatisfaction with a practice, that had long prevailed, of churchmen going to Rome and purchasing benefices at the papal court, and also of their taking disputes to be settled there, which should have been settled in the Scottish courts of law. The Archbishop of St. Andrews did not co-operate with the civil power in trying to get these abuses remedied. To counteract his influence, King James, after many entreaties, induced the pope in 1492 to make Glasgow Cathedral a metropolitan church, and its bishop, Blackadder, an archbishop. The rival archbishops at once began a clerical war against each other so bitter that the Estates in 1493 passed a statute for the purpose of putting them both to silence. In 1494, Blackadder, the new archbishop, sent up thirty persons from Kyle in Ayrshire, convicted of *Lollardism*, to be punished by the civil power. The civil power, however, does not seem to have seconded the persecuting zeal of the archbishop, for it is not recorded that the thirty heretics were punished.

6. It is pleasant to turn from the bitter feuds and persecuting zeal of the archbishops to notice the exertions made by Elphinston, Bishop of Aberdeen, to erect and establish a college in that city. He procured a papal bull for the foundation of King's College in 1494, and completed the buildings in 1500. Encouragement was also given to education by the government, for in 1496 the Parliament passed an act requiring all barons and freeholders, under a penalty of twenty pounds, to send their sons at the age of nine to schools, where they were to be taught Latin, and afterwards to remain three years at the schools of "Art and Jury."

7. In 1495 there came to Scotland a person called Perkin Warbeck, who pretended that he was Richard, Duke of York, one of the sons of Edward IV. of England, whom their uncle Richard III. had caused to be murdered in the Tower of London. When Richard was slain at *Bosworth* in 1485, Henry, the head of the House of Lancaster, became king, and was now reigning as Henry VII. He had married Elizabeth, the sister of the murdered princes. She was the

heiress of the House of York. But if either of the princes had not been murdered and was alive, he was the rightful heir to the crown of England.

8. Margaret, the widow of the Duke of Burgundy, the aunt of the two princes, caused a report to be spread that she knew that the ruffians sent to kill the princes had despatched the elder, but that, seized with remorse, they had spared the younger, carried him off, and kept him in concealment. She at length declared she had discovered him, and managed to persuade the King of France and other princes, as well as the King of Scotland, that Perkin Warbeck, the son of a Flemish Jew, was Richard, Duke of York. He was hospitably received by James IV., who treated him as a prince and gave him in marriage Lady Catherine Gordon, daughter of the Earl of Huntly, and granddaughter of James I.

9. In 1495 James invaded Northumberland in his behalf; but Ramsay, the favourite who had been spared at Lauder Bridge, and who, though his estates had been forfeited at the beginning of this reign, had been allowed to remain in Scotland, kept Henry informed of what was going on, and dissuaded the Earl of Ross, the king's brother, and others, from taking part in the expedition; and, as it was not joined by any of the northern Lords of England, it was a failure. The expedition against England was renewed in 1497, but with no better success. James is said to have discovered that Warbeck was an impostor, but would not disown the man who had married his kinswoman. Perkin was sent away from Scotland with a splendid escort, and his wife, who was called the White Rose of Scotland, accompanied him. He landed in Cornwall, left his wife at St. Michael's Mount, failed in an attack on Exeter, was taken captive, committed to the Tower, and hanged at Tyburn in 1499.

10. During the *Wars of the Roses* in England, Scotland had enjoyed a breathing time of peace and had become comparatively rich and powerful. Its alliance was consequently more than ever courted by the great continental powers. Ferdinand of Spain wished to make his country the leading Catholic power in Europe, and sought to form what was called a Holy Alliance against France. Into this alliance or league he desired to bring both England and Scotland. As a step in this direction Ferdinand's daughter, the Princess Catherine, was married to Arthur, the eldest son of the King of England, and when he died, to Prince Henry, afterwards Henry VIII. Catherine's sister-in-law, the Princess Margaret of England, Henry VII.'s daughter, was next married to James IV. of Scotland, and

thus a firm foundation was thought to be laid for a family compact or league against France. Scotland joined England in a treaty with Spain, but Henry VII. could not be persuaded to make war on France, and when difficulties arose King James preferred to abide by France, the old and trusty ally of Scotland.

11. The marriage of the King of Scots to the Princess Margaret of England in 1502 was an event of great importance to both England and Scotland, for, 101 years afterwards, the great grandson of the royal pair became King of England, and thus the crowns of the two countries were united. The marriage was celebrated with great pomp at Holyrood, and Dunbar, a great Scottish poet of that time, sang of it as "the union of the Thistle and the Rose."

12. The marriage rejoicings were scarcely over when a rebellion in the north demanded the attention of the king. The whole array of the kingdom was called forth and the outbreak was suppressed. A parliament held at Edinburgh in 1503 passed vigorous resolutions for the civilization of the Highlands. The northern and western districts were divided into sheriffdoms, and permanent judges were appointed to administer justice. In 1504 the king led a force to the Borders, and by a judicious mixture of severity and kindness produced tranquillity there. This expedition is known as the Raid of Eskdale.

13. The art of printing, which had been introduced into England by Caxton in 1474, found its way to Scotland in 1505. Walter Chapman, a servant of the king's household, established a press at Edinburgh. He was patronized by the king, who purchased books from him and granted him a royal patent for the exercise of his art.

14. King James IV. was a highly accomplished monarch, and was greatly beloved by both the nobility and the common people. He was an expert linguist and fond of study, but not a recluse like his father. He could speak Latin, German, French, Flemish, Italian, Spanish, and the two languages of his own country, Scotch and Gaelic. He was skilled in all feats of strength and in arms. He kept up much royal state and magnificence at his court, and pleased his warlike nobles by *tilts* and *tournaments* at Edinburgh and Stirling. Knights from all parts of Europe were attracted to these warlike sports, and liberal rewards were impartially bestowed on the victors. He often went about in disguise among the common people, and thus learned the opinions that were entertained of himself and the measures of his government.

15. He gave great encouragement to seamanship and ship-building, and soon made the Scottish navy powerful and respected in all seas. He took into favour Sir Andrew Wood of Largo, who had been a famous sea captain in the latter years of his father's reign. In 1490 five English ships came into the Scottish seas and plundered the Scottish merchantmen. Wood attacked them with his two ships, the Flower and Yellow Carvel, took the whole of them, and carried them into Leith. This roused the indignation of the English, and Stephen Bull, a renowned commander, was sent with three strong ships to bring him to England dead or alive. They met off St. Abb's Head on a May morning. A terrible fight began at once, and so intent were the mariners on the battle that, during its progress, they permitted the ships to be drifted into the mouth of the Tay. Wood's superior tactics enabled him to gain the victory. The three English ships were captured and carried into Dundee. Wood presented Bull to the king, who magnanimously sent him back to England without a ransom.

16. Another great sea captain of that time was Sir Andrew Barton, who, with his brother Robert, had obtained letters of reprisal against the Portuguese, because they had captured and refused to give up their brother, John Barton. The Bartons cruised in the English Channel, and not only attacked Portuguese ships, but English vessels bound for Portugal. An expedition was fitted out against them under Lord Thomas and Sir Edward Howard. In 1512 they fought in the Downs. The Howards gained the victory. Andrew Barton's ship, the Lion, was carried into the Thames, and became the second man-of-war in the English navy, the Great Henry, built by the king himself, being the first.

17. In 1511 James had caused a great ship to be built called the Michael, which was at that time the largest afloat. It was 240 feet long. The hull was 10 feet thick of solid oak, and invulnerable by the artillery of that age. This great war-ship and thirteen others formed a fleet of which any country might have been proud.

18. When James sought redress from the English government for the capture of Barton's ships, it was refused on the ground that they were pirate ships, which it was the duty of every civilized government to capture or destroy. This refusal was a cause of unfriendliness between James and his brother-in-law, Henry VIII. The refusal of the English king to give to James money and jewels which his wife inherited from her father, Henry VII., still further embittered the relations between the two monarchs. Ferdinand of

Spain and the King of England were going to war with France. France wanted the aid of Scotland, and the Scots were inclined to stand by their old allies, though they would fain have supported the French by diplomacy rather than by active hostilities. James, however, was eager to avenge the refusal of the English king to give redress for the ships, and to pay the queen's dowry, and when a letter came to him from the Queen of France appointing him her chosen knight, and enjoining him as her champion to march, for her sake, three feet into English ground, he resolved on war. James rushed into this war with great precipitancy and rashness. He sent out his fleet under the command of the Earl of Arran, but it accomplished nothing of importance.

19. The feudal array of the kingdom was summoned to meet on the Boroughmuir of Edinburgh, and soon 100,000 men were there assembled. Many influences were used to turn the king from his purpose of leading this host to battle, but he would not be dissuaded. In August, 1513, the army entered England. The Castles of Northam and Wark were attacked and easily taken. Provisions ran short, and numbers of the Scots were sent home for supplies. But 50,000 remained on the crest of *Flodden*—a gentle rising ground flanked on the east by the high and broken banks of the Till, a deep and sluggish river. There they waited the approach of Surrey, who came against them with 32,000 men. Surrey led his army across the Till by the Bridge of Twisel. Had James here employed the tactics of Wallace at Stirling Bridge he might have destroyed the English army; but he allowed his foes to cross in single file unmolested, and form in order of battle on the plain of Brankstone. Thither he led down his army to meet them.

20. The battle began on the afternoon of Friday, the 9th September. Huntly and Home on the Scottish left broke the right wing of the English, but their men began to plunder instead of following up their advantage. The onward rush of the clansmen of Lennox and Argyle was beaten back by the heavy columns of the English. The Highlanders in their retreat threw the Scottish army into confusion. The commander of the Scottish artillery was killed at the beginning of the fight, and the cannon, though fine, were not worked effectively. In the centre, the king, instead of doing duty as a general and directing the movements of his army, fought with his own hand like a common soldier. The leaders of the Scottish army, following his example, gathered round him. Their followers, left to themselves, were soon broken and dispersed. The nobles and gentry

of Scotland were thus gathered, as it were, for destruction in a cluster round their king, and—

“One by one they fell around him,
As the archers laid them low,
Grimly dying, still unconquered,
With their faces to the foe.”

The king himself fell not far from the English commander, to whom



he seems to have been fighting forward in hopes of a personal engagement.

21. When darkness fell that night on Flodden Field, 10,000 Scots,
(32)

the flower of the nation, lay dead around their fallen king. The news of this disaster filled Scotland with woe and lamentation, but not with despair. Edinburgh was hastily fortified to meet the expected invasion, and measures were taken for the defence of the country.

22. No battle was ever so disastrous to the Scots as this. There was scarcely a Scottish family of note that did not mourn the loss of a relative on Flodden Field, and we still bewail the disaster when we sing "The Flowers of the Forest are a' wede away."

Summary.—James IV. was crowned at Scone in **1488**. There was some dissatisfaction that so little was done to discover the murderer of the late king. The young king had fits of remorse for having allowed himself to be set up in arms against his father, and wore an iron belt as a penance for his want of filial duty. Risings in the west and north to avenge the death of the late king were easily put down. As the Archbishop of St. Andrews was not favourable to the king's policy with respect to the church, Glasgow was made a Metropolitan See, and its bishop, Blackadder, an archbishop. The quarrels between these churchmen became so violent that the Estates had to put them to silence. King's College at Aberdeen was founded in **1494**. Perkin Warbeck came to Scotland in **1495** pretending to be the Duke of York, and heir to the English crown. James received him favourably, and invaded England in his behalf, but without success. Warbeck after various adventures was hanged at Tyburn in **1499**. In **1502** the King of Scots married Margaret, the daughter of Henry VII. The art of printing was introduced into Scotland in **1505**. The Wars of the Roses gave a time of peace and prosperity to the northern kingdom. James encouraged warlike sports to such a degree that knights from all parts of Europe came to take part in them. He paid great attention to his navy, and his captains, Sir Andrew Wood and Sir Andrew Barton, became famous for their exploits at sea. Lord Howard, however, defeated Barton in the Downs and carried his ships into the Thames. Henry VIII., on the ground that Barton was a pirate, would not return the ships, nor would he give up to James certain jewels which his queen inherited from Henry VII. as part of her dowry. This so embittered the Scottish king that, when the Queen of France sent him a letter asking him to invade England, he resolved on war. The result was the battle of Flodden, in which the king and the flower of his nobility were slain.

QUESTIONS.

1. What for some time remained a mystery after the battle of Sauchieburn? What was supposed? What put an end to the mystery? Where was he buried?

2. How did the confederate barons show their moderation? Who was Ramsay? What charge was made against him? How was he punished?

3. Where was James IV. crowned? When? Where did he take up his residence?

4. What caused great dissatisfaction among the people? What filled the king with remorse? What penance did he impose upon himself? What barons raised forces to avenge the king's death? With what result? To satisfy the public what did the Estates do? Who were never found?

5. What were the churchmen in the habit of doing which caused dissatisfaction? Who did not co-operate with the civil power in getting these remedied? What did James do to counteract his influence? What did the rival archbishops at once begin? What step did the Estates take to stop this? Whom did Blackadder hand over to the civil power for punishment?

6. Who was at this time Bishop of Aberdeen? What did he do for education? What did the government do for it in 1496?

7. What remarkable person came to Scotland in 1495? Who did he say he was? Who was now King of England? Whom had he married? What house did she represent? Who would have been heir of the crown of England if alive?

8. What report did Margaret of Burgundy spread? What did she at length declare? By whom was he hospitably received? How was he treated?

9. What did James do for Warbeck? Who informed Henry VII. of what was going on? What made the expedition a failure? When was the attempt renewed? With what result? What is James said to have discovered? Why did he not disown him? Where did Perkin go when he left Scotland? What became of him? When?

10. What had given Scotland peace for a time? What effect had this peace on the country? What did Ferdinand of Spain wish? Against what country was the Holy Alliance aimed? What steps were taken to include England and Scotland? What could Henry VII. not be persuaded to do? Why did James prefer to abide by France?

11. To whom was James IV. married? What makes this marriage an event of great importance to both England and Scotland? Where was the marriage celebrated? What Scottish poet sang of it? What did he call it?

12. Where did a rebellion break out? What did James do to suppress it? What did Parliament do? What steps were taken for the administration of justice in the north and west? How did James produce peace on the Borders? What is this expedition known as?

13. When was printing introduced into Scotland? When had it been introduced into England? By whom? Who set up a printing-press in Edinburgh? How did James encourage him?

14. What shows that James was highly accomplished? How did he please his warlike nobles? How did he learn the opinions of the common people regarding his measures?

15. How did he make the Scottish navy powerful? For what purpose did five English ships enter Scottish seas in 1490? Who attacked them? How many ships had he? What was the result of the engagement? Who was sent to avenge this disaster? With how many ships? Where did he meet Wood? What happened? What became of Bull?

16. Mention another great sea captain. Against whom had he received letters of reprisal? Why? Where did he cruise? What ships did they attack? Who took command of an expedition against them? Where did they meet? What was the result of the battle?

17. What were the dimensions of the Michael? How many ships did the Scottish fleet comprise?

18. What excuse did Henry make for the capture of Barton's ships? What still further embittered the relations between James and Henry? What nations were combined against France? Whose aid did France solicit? What were the Scots inclined to do? What was James anxious for? What determined him to declare war? Who had command of the fleet?

19. How many men answered the summons of James? What castles did he take? Why were numbers of the Scots sent home? How many remained? Where were they posted? Who commanded the English army? Where did he cross the Till? What did James neglect to do?

20. When did the battle begin? Which wing of the English was defeated? By whom? What did the Scots begin to do? What should they have done? What portion of the Scottish army was defeated? Why was the Scottish artillery not effective? What should the King of Scots have done? What did he do? What did the leaders do? What does the King of Scots seem to have been fighting forward for? What became of him?

21. How many Scots fell in the battle? What effect had the news on Scotland? On Edinburgh?

22. Why was no battle ever so disastrous to Scotland?

CHAPTER XXII.

JAMES V., 1513-1542, 29 Years.

Accession of James V.,	1513
The king's mother marries Angus,	1514
Albany made regent,	1515
Albany retires to France,	1517
Skirmish of "Cleanse the Causeway,"	1520
Albany comes back from France,	1520
Albany brings troops from France,	1523
Albany finally leaves Scotland,	1524
"Erection of the King,"	1524
Angus gets possession of the king,	1526
Martyrdom of Patrick Hamilton,	1528
The king hangs the Border chiefs,	1531
The king marries Magdalen of France,	1537
The king marries Mary of Lorraine,	1537
Rout of Solway Moss,	1542
Birth of Mary Queen of Scots,	1542
Death of the king,	1542

1. The danger of invasion against which the nation, and particularly the city of Edinburgh, made active preparation passed away; for Surrey, partly from scarcity of provisions, and partly on account of the loss he had sustained at Flodden, was unable to follow up his victory by invasion, and his army was dispersed.

2. In October, 1513, a Parliament assembled at Perth. It was chiefly composed of the clergy, because most of the nobility had been killed at Flodden. It first proceeded to crown at Scone the young *king*, who was not yet three years old, and then appointed the queen

to be regent and guardian to the young prince. It was not, however, expected that this appointment would be either permanent or satisfactory; for the queen was a woman of strong passions, and more likely to be influenced by them than by considerations of what was becoming her dignity and likely to be for the good of the king and his kingdom.

3. In August, 1514, she married the young Earl of Angus, whose father had been killed at Flodden. Their descendants became kings of Scotland and England, for their daughter married the Earl of Lennox, and was the mother of Lord Darnley, the father of James VI. of Scotland and I. of England.

4. It will be remembered that the Duke of Albany, the younger brother of James III., had retired to France. The son of this exile was now Admiral of France, and had great possessions there. To him the Estates looked for help in their difficulties. He was sent for and made **Regent**. In May, 1515, he landed at Dumbarton, accompanied by a band of gay French companions. Though a member of the Scottish royal family, he was a Frenchman by birth and education. Accustomed to the luxurious living and the despotic government of France, he had little sympathy with the hardy and independent Scots whom he came to govern. His first care was to get the young king and his brother out of the hands of the queen, for there was reason to fear that she might be induced to give them up to her brother Henry VIII. When commissioners were sent to Edinburgh to remove them from her custody, she showed them through the bars of the portcullis of the castle, refused to give them up, and declared she would hold the castle in their defence. She, however, soon after carried off the royal children to Stirling; but when a besieging force was sent thither, she surrendered and gave them up to the regent.

5. Albany next set himself to remedy the disorders arising from the feuds of the nobles, which chiefly centred among the Douglasses and their rivals the Hamiltons. He got assistance from France. Angus offered resistance, but he was seized and sent to France, where he was kept in restraint. The queen, his wife, escaped to England, where she gave birth to a daughter. Angus soon after managed to escape from France, and joined her at the court of England, where he was welcomed by Henry VIII. as one who might be used for the purpose of furthering his selfish ends with respect to Scotland. Lord Home, the only man of distinction who came alive from Flodden, a partisan of Angus, was seized in Edinburgh and beheaded.

6. Albany had been little more than a year in Scotland when, wearied of his troublesome duties as regent, he returned to France. The Estates remonstrated against his departure. He promised to return in four months, but he stayed away five years, and did not return till 1521.

7. Albany left behind him French garrisons in the fortresses of Dumbarton, Dunbar, and Inchgarvie. He left also a Frenchman, Sieur de la Bastie, who appears to have acted as a warden of the Marches. The Frenchmen were hateful to the Scots. The Homes regarded with peculiar disfavour De la Bastie, who filled the office of the late Lord Home. They lured him to the tower of Langton, near Dunse, to put down a squabble which they themselves had raised there. When the poor warden saw himself and his small force surrounded by men who mocked at his authority, he put spurs to his horse and fled. His horse floundered in a swamp, when his pursuers came up with him and put him to death. Home of Wedderburn hung the dead man's head to his saddle-bow by its curled locks, and rode with it in triumph to Home Castle. The King of France was displeased, and demanded the punishment of the criminals. The Scots made a great display of zeal in hunting after them, but managed not to bring any one to trial for the murder. A treaty for mutual defence against England was, notwithstanding, concluded between France and Scotland.

8. The queen and her husband Angus returned to Scotland; but shortly after they quarrelled, separated, and were at length divorced. This discord diminished the power of Angus, but he strove with all his might to regain predominance. The Earl of Arran, the head of the house of Hamilton, who was connected by blood with the royal family, was his great rival. These two noblemen were the heads of two great factions which distracted the country.

9. In 1520 the Hamiltons met in the Blackfriars Church at Edinburgh, and were arranging a plan to overwhelm the Douglasses, who were believed to have a weak party in the city, and to make Angus prisoner. When Angus heard of this meeting he sent his uncle Gavin Douglas, Bishop of Dunkeld, to remonstrate with Bishop Beaton, by whose advice the Hamiltons were acting. In answer to the remonstrance of Douglas, Beaton clapped his hand on his heart and said, "Upon my conscience I cannot help what is about to happen," when the mail below his bishop's dress was heard to rattle. "Ha, my lord," said the Bishop of Dunkeld, "your conscience is not *sound*, as appears from its clatters." The bishop, after administering

this rebuke, left, and warned Angus to defend himself. The Douglasses were attacked, but defended themselves so bravely, and made so complete a sweep of their assailants from the streets, that the battle was called "*Clear the Causeway.*"

10. Angus after this held Edinburgh for some time, and would probably soon have attained to supreme power had not the queen thwarted his projects. She used all her influence to bring back Albany from France, and in 1521 he reluctantly returned. Though welcomed by the queen, he was more unpopular than ever. He was hated as being more a Frenchman than a Scotsman. He was suspected of aiming at securing the crown for himself, or of wishing to carry off the young king to France, where he would be made a fit instrument of converting Scotland into a French dependency.

11. This hatred of Albany might have resulted in his dismissal and a closer connection with England, had not King Henry threatened war against the Scots if they did not dismiss him. The Scots might have sent away Albany of their own accord, but a threat from England made them determine to do the very opposite. There was danger of an invasion from England, but the Scots would rather keep the man they hated and resist invasion, than be dictated to by the English.

12. The Scots hastily raised an army of 80,000 men, and in September, 1522, moved towards the western Border. The Earl of Surrey and Lord Dacre, to whom the protection of the Border had been committed, were not prepared to meet such a force. When the mighty host reached Annan Lord Dacre came to Albany, withdrew the insulting demand of England, and obtained a cessation of arms, whereupon the army dispersed. The conduct of Albany on this occasion was much deplored. When he wanted to return to France the Scots made a show of reluctance, but allowed him to go.

13. Lord Dacre had secured the dismissal of the Scottish army without the renewal of the truce between the two countries. This was an advantage to England, for as the countries were technically still at war, Lord Dacre next year led 10,000 men into Scotland by the eastern marches, and burned the town of Jedburgh (1523). Immediately thereafter Albany returned from France, bringing with him a force of 3500 men, whom the Scots regarded as enemies rather than friends. As England was still threatening the country and laying waste the Border an army for defence was again raised. It assembled on the Boroughmuir to the number of about 50,000. Albany led this force and the French auxiliaries towards the Border,

but, when the Scots came to a wooden bridge over the Tweed at Melrose, they would go no farther. They let it be known that they would defend their country from invasion, but that they would not do the work of France by invading England.

14. The regent, with his French troops, crossed the Tweed and laid siege to Wark Castle, but he was driven back and had to recross the river. It was November and snowstorms came on, from which the army suffered greatly. The failure of this expedition brought great odium on Albany, who, in the month of May, 1524, took leave of Scotland never to return. The foreign troops, whose presence had so much annoyed the Scots, departed along with him.

15. It was now the great aim of Wolsey, the minister of Henry VIII., to detach Scotland from the French alliance. He proposed that the King of Scots should marry the English princess Mary, and talked in his correspondence of the likelihood of James becoming King of England. The Beatons, James, and his nephew David who afterwards became cardinal, opposed the policy of Wolsey. The English minister, however, chiefly through the influence of the queen-mother and Arran, succeeded in August, 1524, in getting the young king conveyed from Stirling to Edinburgh, where he was invested with the ensigns of royalty, and a declaration was made that he had assumed the government. This was called *The Erection of the King*. James being only in his thirteenth year was unfit to govern, but the "Erection" put an end to the regency of Albany, and was so far detrimental to the French influence.

16. The government was for some time conducted in the king's name by the queen-mother and Arran; but the Earl of Angus returned from England, forced the queen to come to terms with him, and in 1526 got himself, with Argyle and Errol, appointed guardians of the young king. They were each to have charge of the king a quarter of a year in succession. It was Angus' lot to have him first, but, when the end of the three months came, he would not part with the king. He formed a league with Arran, whom he detached from the queen's party, and ruled in the name of the king, whom he kept in severe restraint. From this bondage James wished to get free, and several attempts were made to release him. On one of these occasions Angus told the king that if his enemies got hold of him on one side, his friends would keep hold on the other, though he should be torn in twain in the struggle.

17. After two years of this captivity the king, in May, 1528, when Angus was absent, escaped from Falkland. Disguised as a groom,

he, along with his page, John Hart, and a yeoman, pretended to go on a hunting expedition, but galloped off to Stirling, where he was gladly received by the governor of the castle. Angus, on hearing of the king's escape, knew that his power was gone. The king had no mercy for him. He was forbidden to approach within six miles of the royal presence, and his estates were forfeited. He held out against the king for a time in Tantallon Castle, but was at length compelled to take refuge in England.

18. In 1528 the ecclesiastical authorities handed over to the civil power Patrick Hamilton, whom they had convicted of heresy. He was burned in front of the old college of St. Andrews. He was the first native Scotsman who suffered for the opinions that prevailed at the Reformation.

19. The struggle with Angus brought the king into collision with the Borderers, many of whom were vassals of the house of Douglas. The Border chiefs had been useful in recovering territory from the English, but they exercised a kind of independent authority in their districts. The king determined to put an end to this state of matters, and to make these districts subject to his own rule. He accordingly, in 1531, marched to the Border with a force of 8000 men, seized many of the chiefs at their own gates, and hanged them on their own dule trees. John Armstrong, the head of his clan, went to meet the king in a friendly way, accompanied with a train of twenty-eight mounted men. When James saw him he said, "What wants yon knave that a king should have?" and then ordered him to be seized and hanged.

20. The king next directed his attention to the West Highlands, where disturbances had arisen. Argyle had been made Lieutenant of the West, and had asked the government for aid in quelling the disorders. The privy council refused to put the array of the Lowland counties at the disposal of Argyle, and decided that the king himself should lead an army to put down the disturbances. The Council opened communications with the heads of the clans, which led to such revelations that Argyle was deprived of his lieutenancy, and was even for a time imprisoned. The crown then took to itself the government of the Western Highlands, and made John of Isla and other chiefs responsible for the collection of feudal dues and other taxes. The nobles regarded this treatment of Argyle as a blow aimed at their order, and some of them were so offended that they agreed to transfer their allegiance to England.

21. In 1532 Northumberland, with Angus and others, made a raid

into Scotland to plunder, burn, and destroy. The Scots retaliated, and for a time there was war on the Borders, but peace was at length concluded between the two countries.

22. The alliance of Scotland was at this time much courted by the nations of Europe. Henry VIII., who had quarrelled with the pope and made himself the head of the Church in England, wished to have his nephew, the King of Scots, on his side. The King of France, the Emperor of Germany, and the pope desired him to come forth as the champion of the church against his uncle. Henry sent him the Order of the Garter, the King of France gave him the Order of St. Michael, the emperor bestowed on him the most illustrious of all orders, the Golden Fleece, while the pope communicated to him his blessing, gave him a cap and a consecrated sword, and made him a kind of promise that he should be promoted to the office of Defender of the Faith. Henry was anxious to have a conference with James at York, but James, acting under the advice of Beaton, would not promise to go farther than Newcastle.

23. The king's marriage became a matter of great importance, not only to the king himself, but to the powers who courted his favour. The Princess Mary of England, now that a son had been born to Henry VIII., was not so attractive a match as she had once been; but some were still in favour of such a union. The emperor suggested in succession the Princess of Denmark, his own sister, the widow of the King of Hungary, and his niece, Mary of Portugal. But to strengthen the old alliance with France, Mary, the daughter of the Duke of Vendome, was at last selected, and James, in 1537, went to France to see his intended bride, but when there he fell in love with Magdalen, the king's daughter, and married her instead. She, however, was delicate, and died a few months after her arrival in Scotland. Next year the king took to wife Mary of Lorraine, daughter of the Duke of Guise. She was brought over from France by Cardinal David Beaton, and the marriage was celebrated at St. Andrews.

24. About this time there were trials and executions for conspiracies against the king's life. Many of the victims were connected with the exiled Earl of Angus. Lord Forbes, who was married to a sister of Angus, was charged with designing to shoot the king, and executed. Lady Glamis, the sister of Angus, was accused of "conspiring and imagining the king's death" by poison, for which she was burned on the Castle Hill of Edinburgh. People believed that she suffered not for guilt, but on account of the hatred of the *king to her brothers.*

25. In 1539 Cardinal Beaton became Archbishop of St. Andrews. Early in the same year five Protestants were burned for heresy on the Castle Hill of Edinburgh.

26. In May, 1540, an heir to the throne was born, after which James set sail with a fleet to the Orkney Islands, ran through the Pentland Firth and visited the Western Isles, where he saw many of the chiefs and received their duty and submission. In due time a second son was born, and the succession to the crown seemed secured; but in 1541, first the younger prince died and then the elder, and the king was left childless.

27. James, left without an heir to his crown, and hated by the nobles, whose power he had tried to curb, and many of whose estates he had forfeited, had a gloomy future before him. His uncle, Henry VIII., grew more dictatorial, and again desired a conference at York, to which James agreed. Henry travelled in state to York, but the King of Scots did not come to meet him. Henry was furious, and declared war. He also asserted the old claim of supremacy, and in 1542 sent Norfolk to Scotland with an army to lay waste the country. Sir Robert Bowes, with Angus and his brother, led 3000 horsemen to harry-Jedburgh, but they were attacked by the Homes, defeated, and put to flight. Norfolk led 30,000 men northwards, but as the country was made bare before them, they had to be disbanded for want of food. The king led an army southwards, and had reached Fala Moor, when the news came of the dispersal of the English force under Norfolk. Many of the nobles refused to invade England, but a force of 10,000 men was induced to cross the Esk, and enter English ground on the Western Border. The king had unwisely appointed Oliver Sinclair, one of his favourites, to take command of the army when it entered England. When Oliver, raised on a platform, began to read his commission, the leaders received it with shouts of indignation, and all discipline and caution were forgotten. Lord Dacre, who was hovering near with about 600 English horsemen, saw the confusion, dashed in among the Scots, who, besides being in disorder, were unwilling to fight, and fled in all directions. This affair is known as the *Rout of Solway Moss*.

28. The king was at Caerlaverock Castle when he heard the news of this disaster. In deep sorrow he retired northwards to Falkland Palace, where his vexation brought on a low fever. On the 7th of December tidings were brought to him that the queen had given birth to a daughter at Linlithgow. Thinking of the crown of Scotland, and the dangers that would beset a female heir, the dying

man murmured, "It cam wi' a lass and it will gang wi' a lass." Seven days after, on December 14th, 1542, James V. died in the thirty-first year of his age and the twenty-ninth of his reign.

29. James V. was much beloved by his people, by whom he was long remembered as the "King of the Commons," but the nobles disliked him for trying to break down their power. He was a poet of considerable merit, and to him is ascribed the authorship of "We'll gang nae mair a roving" and "The Gaberlunzie Man." In his reign the Court of Session was instituted (1532). Though there was much misrule, the country advanced in wealth and took a respectable place among the European powers.

Summary.—Surrey was unable to follow up his victory at Flodden by an invasion of Scotland. A Parliament met as soon as possible, and the king, though not three years old, was crowned at Scone. The queen-mother was made regent and guardian of her son. In August, 1514, she married the Earl of Angus. The son of Albany, the exiled brother of James III., was now Admiral of France. He was sent for and made regent, but, being a Frenchman and bringing Frenchmen in his train, he did not win the affections of the Scots. He managed to get the young king out of the hands of his mother. The feuds of the nobles gave him such trouble that in little more than a year he returned to France. In his absence the Homes murdered De la Bastie, whom he had left behind him as Warden of the Marches. The Hamiltons and the Douglasses were the two great factions that disturbed the country. The Hamiltons attacked the Douglasses in the High Street of Edinburgh, but were defeated. The skirmish is known as "Clear the Causeway." Albany returned from France in 1521. He was disliked, and might have been dismissed by the Scots, but they kept him because his dismissal was demanded by Henry VIII. There was danger of an invasion, and an army was raised for resistance; but when Lord Dacre withdrew Henry's demand it was dispersed, and Albany was allowed to depart. He returned in 1523 with a French force, and a Scottish army was raised, but it refused to cross the Tweed with him. After an unsuccessful attack on Wark Castle he and his French followers left Scotland never to return (1524). The king, though only thirteen years of age, was now invested with the ensigns of royalty, and declared to have assumed the government. This was called "The Erection of the King." Angus soon after got the king into his custody, and kept him in restraint for two years. The king, however, escaped in 1526. Douglas lost his power and fled to England.

Great severity was used in bringing the Border clans into subjection, and the king took from Argyle the government of the Western Highlands. This displeased many of the nobility, who thought that James wished to deprive them of their power. The alliance of Scotland was much courted by the sovereigns of Europe. The king first married Magdalen of France, who died soon after her marriage, and then Mary of Guise. James, having failed to keep an appointment to meet Henry VIII. at York, the English king was so enraged that he sent an army to Scotland, under Norfolk, to lay waste the country. This army had to be disbanded for want of food. The King of Scots led an army to Fala Moor, but the nobles refused to invade England. He, however, induced 10,000 men to cross the Esk; but when they learned that his favourite, Oliver Sinclair, was to command them, they became disorderly and allowed Lord Dacre to put them to flight at Solway Moss. James withdrew in disgust to Falkland, where he died after hearing that his queen had given birth to a daughter.

QUESTIONS.

1. Why was Surrey unable to follow up his victory?

2. Why was the Parliament assembled at Perth chiefly composed of clergymen? How old was the young king? Where was he crowned? Who was appointed regent? Why was this appointment not expected to be permanent?

3. To whom was the queen dowager married? When? How did their descendants become connected with the Stuart line?

4. To whom did the Estates in their difficulties look for help? Who and what was he? What did they do? Where did he land? How was it that he had little sympathy with the Scots? What was his first care? Why? Where was she with them? Whither did she go with them? To whom did she give them up?

5. What two families among the higher nobility were at feud? What became of Angus? Of the queen? Where did they meet? Why did Henry VIII. welcome him? What became of Lord Home?

6. Why did Albany return to France? How long had he been in Scotland? When did he promise to return? When did he return?

7. Where did Albany leave French garrisons? Who was De la Bastie? Why was De la Bastie particularly distasteful to the Homes? What became of him? What did the King of France demand? How did the Scots act? What treaty did the Scots enter into at this time?

8. What occurred between the queen and Angus shortly after their return to Scotland? What did it lead to? What effect had this on the power of Angus? Who was his great rival?

9. For what purpose did the Hamiltons in 1520 meet in the Blackfriars Church at Edinburgh? By whose advice were the Hamiltons acting? Who was sent to remonstrate with him? What reply did Beaton make? What did Gavin Douglas answer? How did the Douglasses behave when attacked? What has this fight been called? Why?

10. What prevented Angus from attaining supreme power? For what did the queen use her influence? When did Albany return? What was he suspected of?

11. What might the hatred of Albany have led to? What prevented this?

12. When an invasion was threatened what did the Scots do? To what Border did the Scots march? Who had charge of the English Borders? What led to a cessation of arms? How was Albany's conduct viewed by the people? What became of Albany?

13. When did Lord Dacre enter Scotland? At the head of how many men? What town did he burn? When did Albany return? What force did he bring with him? How were they regarded by the Scots? Why was an army again raised? What force had Albany when he set out for the Border? What reason did the Scots assign for refusing to cross the Border?

14. What did Albany do? What at last brought the expedition to a close? When did Albany finally leave Scotland?

15. Who was at this time minister of Henry VIII.? What was his great object? What did he propose? Who opposed his policy? Whose influence was used on the side of the English minister? What did they succeed in getting done? What was this called? How was this injurious to French influence?

16. Who for some time conducted the government? Whom did Angus on his return get appointed guardians? What arrangement was made as to the possession of the king? Who was to have him first? How did he act when his term was finished?

17. How long was James kept by Angus? How did he escape? What sentence was passed against Angus? Where did he take refuge?

18. Who was convicted of heresy in 1528? What was done to him?

19. How did the struggle with Angus bring the king into collision with the Borderers? In what had the Border clans been useful? What did the king determine to do? How did he carry out his determination? What noted Border man went to meet the king? What did the king say and do?

20. To what district did the king next turn his attention? Who was lieutenant there? What had he asked the government to do? What did the privy council decide to do? With whom did the privy council open

communications? What did this lead to? What did the crown then do? How did the nobles regard this treatment of Argyle? What did some of them agree to do?

21. What led to war on the Borders?

22. What parties desired the alliance of Scotland? Who wished James to become the champion of the church? What did Henry VIII. send him? The King of France? The Emperor of Germany? The pope? Who advised James against a conference with Henry at York?

23. What had now become a matter of great importance? Why was the Princess Mary of England now not so attractive a match as formerly? Whom did the Emperor of Germany suggest? Who was at last selected? What was the inducement? What happened when James went to France to see her? When did she die? Whom did he next marry?

24. What caused several executions at this time? Name some of the persons executed? With whom were they connected?

25. Who was made Archbishop of St. Andrews? When? How many Protestants were burned for heresy on the Castle Hill of Edinburgh in 1539?

26. When was an heir born? What islands did James visit in 1540? What did he receive from the chiefs? How did the succession to the crown seem secured? When did James's two sons die?

27. What made James's future gloomy? To what proposal of Henry VIII. did James agree? What made Henry furious? What did he do? What old claim did he revive? For what purpose did he send Norfolk to Scotland? Who were sent to harry Jedburgh? By whom were they attacked? With what result? Why had Norfolk to disband his army? What news reached the king at Fala? What effect had this on the nobles? How many did the king induce to cross the Esk? Whom had he appointed to the command? How was the reading of his commission received? Who took advantage of the confusion? How many men had he? What did he do? What was the result? What is this affair called?

28. Where was the king when he

received the news? Where did he go? What was the effect of his vexation? What news did the dying king receive? What did he say? When did he die? How long had he reigned? What was his age?

29. What name did his people give him? Why did the nobles hate him? What poems are ascribed to him? What court was instituted in his reign? When? What advance was made by Scotland during this reign?

CHAPTER XXIII.

MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS, 1542-1560, 18 Years.

Accession of Mary Queen of Scots,	1542
Hertford burns Edinburgh,	1544
Hertford's second expedition,	1544
Martyrdom of Wishart,	1546
Battle of Pinkie,	1547
The queen sent to France,	1548
Mary of Guise made Regent,	1554
The queen married to the Dauphin,	1558
The Reformation accomplished,	1560

1. On the 14th December, 1542, **Mary Stuart**, an infant seven days old, became Queen of Scotland. Cardinal Beaton endeavoured to obtain possession of the queen by a written testament of the late king, which was said to be either forged or obtained by fraud; but the Estates conferred the regency on **James Hamilton, Earl of Arran**, who was next heir to the throne, and allowed the infant queen to remain at Linlithgow in charge of her mother.

2. Henry VIII. thought that he had now a good opportunity of uniting the two kingdoms by the marriage of the young Queen of Scots to his only son, Edward, Prince of Wales; and had he been less impatient, and more moderate in his demands, he might have succeeded. Henry had in his possession the Earl of Angus, and a number of the Scottish nobility who had been taken prisoners at Solway Moss. These men, who afterwards were called the "Assured Scots," or the "English Lords," he agreed to send home on condition that they would endeavour to get the young queen and the fortresses of the country placed in his hands. They promised what Henry demanded, and gave their sons or other near relations as hostages for their fidelity. The forfeiture against Angus was reversed by the Scottish Parliament, and he and his brother, Sir George Douglas, together with the Lords Cassilis, Glencairn, Fleming, Maxwell, Somerville, and Oliphant, returned to Scotland, pledged to carry out the wishes of Henry VIII. They had, however, promised more than they were able, perhaps more than they were quite willing, to perform. The

great body of the Scottish people were jealous of England, because the English policy seemed always directed towards the annexation of Scotland.

3. The Scots had no such jealousy of France, because though the French were sometimes insolent, they had often aided them in times of danger, and had never as yet threatened their independence. So strong was the Scottish love of independence that the "Assured Lords," when suspected of being Henry's emissaries, could not even count on the support of their own vassals. They could neither induce the Scots to give up the child to Henry, nor to abandon the French league. Treaties, however, were drawn up for an alliance between England and Scotland, including their allies, and for the marriage of Prince Edward to the Queen of Scots. The queen was to be given up after ten years, and then the marriage ceremony was to be performed. There were careful stipulations for the independent sovereignty and name of Scotland being preserved, even though the two countries should come to have one king.

4. While these treaties were being adjusted in London, the party that stood out most strenuously for national independence and the French alliance resolved to get possession of the queen. At the head of this party was Cardinal Beaton. At his instigation Lennox, Argyle, Huntly, and others mustered their forces to the number of 20,000, and carried off the queen and her mother from Linlithgow Palace to Stirling Castle, which they thought, from its vicinity to the Highlands and greater distance from England, would be a safer residence than either Linlithgow or Edinburgh.

5. In August, 1543, the treaties were ratified at Edinburgh in the absence of the cardinal and his party, but with their consent. In September, Arran, the governor, repented of what he had done, joined the cardinal's party, and agreed to co-operate with them in opposing the English policy. The Scots now said that the treaties had been ratified in a packed Parliament, and that a full meeting of the Estates would require to be held before they were finally confirmed. This delay and the conduct of Arran enraged King Henry. He swore that he would seize the child and drag her out of the strongest fortress the Scots could put her in. In his fury he ordered certain Scottish merchant vessels, that had taken refuge in English ports, to be seized and detained. This the Scottish Estates declared to be a violation of the truce, and in December the treaties were repudiated as having been broken by King Henry, and the ancient leagues with France were renewed.

6. Early in 1544 Henry declared war, and sent Hertford by sea with an army to Scotland. Hertford's orders directed him to wanton devastation and destruction rather than to victory or conquest. On the 1st of May, 1544, the English force under command of Hertford landed at Granton. Leith was sacked and burned. Edinburgh was set on fire; and the beautiful city on its mountain ridge blazed for three days and three nights in sight of Fife and the Lothians, and kindled in the hearts of the people a deeper hatred than ever against the King of England. After attacking the towns on the coast of Fife the English forces retired by the east coast, destroying and plundering as they went.

7. Sir Ralph Evers and Sir Brian Latour, who had done great service in Hertford's burning and slaying expedition, got a grant of territory, comprising the counties of Berwick and Roxburgh. They entered this territory to subdue and take possession with a force of 5000 men. Angus, whose lands they encroached on, and whom they meant to punish for his failure to fulfil his promises to the King of England, had the mortification of seeing them burn Jedburgh, destroy Melrose, and break up the tombs of his ancestors there. In his indignation at the insult done to the ashes of the Douglasses he recklessly attacked the sacrilegious invaders, and was repulsed; but he sullenly followed them at a safe distance until he was reinforced by Leslies and Lindsays from the north, and by Buccleuch the chief of the Scotts, and other Border chiefs with their followers. Near Ancrum he fell upon the English, who had not been aware of the gathering of such forces, and completely defeated them, 1544. Evers and Latour were found among the slain.

8. This success encouraged the Scots to make further resistance, and a considerable army was sent to the Border; but as part of it was composed of the "Assured Lords" and their followers, who could not be depended on, it did no effectual service. The defeat at Ancrum was very exasperating to Henry. In the following year another expedition was fitted out and sent under Hertford to complete the ruin of the Border districts. This time the raid was not from the sea, but from the English Border. September was the month chosen for the work of devastation, because then the corn would be cut, and gathered, and ready for destruction. Scarcely ever was there so much wanton mischief done in Scotland as in that autumn of 1545. Kelso Abbey made some resistance, but it was attacked and a breach made in it with cannon. Of towns, towers, and parish churches 192 were destroyed, of villages 243.

Seven monasteries and friar-houses were battered down and sacked, including Kelso, Melrose, Roxburgh, Dryburgh, and Coldingham. These buildings were never restored, and it should be remembered that their ruin is due to the Earl of Hertford, and not to John Knox and the Reformers.

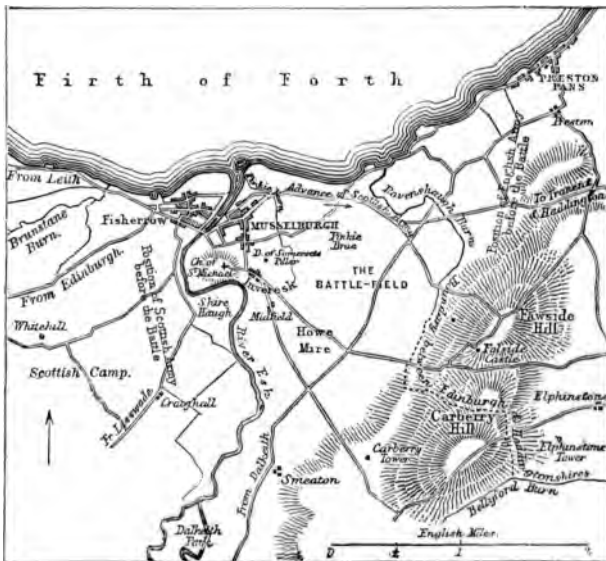
9. During these two years of wanton destruction on the eastern coasts and the Borders there was a stirring up of Protestant feeling in Scotland. In 1544 George Wishart, a native of the Mearns, who had been driven into banishment by the Bishop of Brechin for teaching the Greek New Testament at Montrose, and who had resided for some time at the University of Cambridge, returned to his native country. In the winter of 1545 he preached at Haddington, where John Knox for the first time came forth from the obscurity in which he had previously lived, and attached himself to him. The boldness of Wishart's preaching gave offence to Cardinal Beaton, at whose instigation the reformer was apprehended, tried, condemned, and burned opposite the Castle of St. Andrews. The cardinal looked on at the burning from one of its windows.

10. Three months later, in May, 1546, Norman Leslie and two companions slipped in at the castle gate early in the morning along with some workmen who were employed on the building, and after them came to the gate James Melville and other three, asking an interview with the cardinal. While they were speaking, Kirkaldy of Grange came up with eight armed men. Their appearance roused the suspicion of the porter, but ere he could bar their entrance he was stabbed and pitched into the moat. The few defenders and the workmen were driven out before they could organize any resistance, and the gates were closed. The cardinal, hearing the din, came up the turnpike stair of the keep to ascertain the cause of the commotion. He was met by the invaders and put to death.

11. An alarm was soon spread by those who had been expelled. The common bell was rung, and the townsfolks, headed by the provost, came with great tumult to the castle gate demanding to see the cardinal. The conspirators hung his dead body over the wall, and showed them that they were too late to save him. The castle was too strong to be assailed except by an army, and the sixteen invaders kept possession of it. They were soon joined by a number of determined men, mostly Protestants and favourable to the English interest. Among them was John Knox, who became their pastor. The place was besieged by the regent, but the garrison got supplies *by sea* from English ships, and for fourteen months they defied

all his efforts. A French force, however, under the command of Leo Strozzi was brought over, and an attack was opened both by sea and land. The garrison surrendered, and the castle was completely destroyed in August, 1547. The prisoners were treated as criminals and sent to France, where John Knox and other men of position had to work in chains as galley-slaves.

12. Early in 1547 Henry VIII. died, but Hertford, now Duke of Somerset, and protector during the minority of Edward VI., continued to carry out the policy of aggression. He led 15,000 men into Scotland, and passed along the coast to Musselburgh. This army was supported by a powerful fleet. A Scottish force of about



Sketch to illustrate the Battle of Pinkie.

30,000 men under the regent took up a strong position at Pinkie Cleuch, near Musselburgh, with the view of opposing the invaders, and protecting Edinburgh. The Scots, however, left their vantage-ground on the west bank of the Esk, and went to meet the English. The English cavalry charged the Scottish pikemen, and were re-

pulsed. The Scots pursued, but were checked by a ditch, behind which the cavalry re-formed. The main body of the English army, hitherto concealed behind a ridge, now made a general charge on the Scots. The charge was a surprise, and as the bowmen on the flanks and the artillery on the ridge were at the same time making dreadful havoc among the thick clumps of the Scottish spearmen, it was very effective. The Scots fled in utter rout, and the slaughter was terrible. The defeat of *Pinkie Cleuch* on the 10th September, 1547, was the last great disaster sustained by the Scots in their contest for national independence. Somerset, after destroying the church of Holyrood Abbey, and doing other mischief in the neighbourhood of Edinburgh, had to return to London to put down intrigues that were forming against him there.

13. On the approach of Somerset before the battle of Pinkie the Scots had, for greater safety, removed their young queen from Stirling Castle to the island of Inchmahome, in the lake of Menteith, in Perthshire. After their defeat the Scots were more determined than ever against the English alliance, and looked to France for aid and protection. They did not look in vain, for in June, 1548, a French fleet came to Leith with 6000 auxiliaries and a supply of cannon.

14. The Scottish Estates soon after met at Haddington, and entered into an arrangement with D'Essé, the French ambassador, for the marriage of the Queen of Scots to the Dauphin of France. The Scots took all manner of securities for the independence of their country, and agreed that D'Essé should take Mary away with him to France. When the English heard of this they made arrangements for intercepting D'Essé and his precious charge. The French squadron sailed down the Forth, but instead of sailing southward with the young queen as the English expected, turned suddenly northwards, and went round Scotland by the Pentland Firth to Dumbarton. Mary had been brought from her island home to that fortress. There, having embarked, she was conveyed southward along the west coast, and landed safely at Brest on the 30th of August.

15. For nearly two years after this the war continued, and during that time the Scots, with the aid of the French, recovered from the English Broughty Castle, Inchkeith, and other fortresses, which the English had erected on points commanding the sea-ports and waterways of the country.

16. In 1550 Scotland was included in a treaty of peace between France and England. The old boundaries were restored, and peace was for a short time established.

17. **Mary of Guise**, the queen's mother, became regent in 1554, and Arran, whom she superseded, received, as some compensation for the loss of his dignity, the French Dukedom of Chatelherault. When Mary of Guise became regent she gave offence to the Scots by promoting Frenchmen to offices of trust. She made De Roubay vice-chancellor, and M. Boutot governor of Orkney. She endeavoured to impose a tax for the purpose of supporting a standing army, but such determined opposition was made to her project that she had to abandon it. She contemplated turning the strongholds of the nobles into royal fortresses, which she might garrison with French troops. This policy tended to bring the French alliance into disfavour, for though the Scots would accept aid from foreigners in time of need, and give aid in return, they would not tolerate any interference on the part of foreigners which seemed to endanger the independence of their country. When the regent told Angus that his castle of Tantallon might do for a royal fortress, he answered that it might if he were governor, for he was sure no one else could hold it.

18. In April, 1558, Mary Queen of Scots was married to the Dauphin of France. Six commissioners were sent from Scotland to Paris on that occasion. They stipulated for the preservation of the separate nationality of Scotland. The Dauphin was allowed to take the title of King of Scots, but when he demanded the regalia, his demand was refused. The Scots were suspicious that the house of Valois wanted more than the mere title of king for the Dauphin, and had they known that the queen a few days before the marriage signed documents conveying her kingdom to that house, suspicion would have been changed to certainty. When the six commissioners were on their way home, three of them became suddenly ill and died at Dieppe. There was a suspicion that they were cut off by poison, lest they should make known in Scotland what they had learned with respect to the designs of the French against the national independence.

19. In 1559 Henry II. of France died, and the dauphin succeeded his father as Francis II. His wife, the Queen of Scots, thus became Queen of France. The French court now became patronizing and even domineering in its treatment of Scotland, and seemed to regard that country as if it were a province of France.

20. Mary, Queen of England, had died in 1558, and her sister Elizabeth had succeeded her. As Henry VIII. had not been divorced by the pope from his first wife Catherine, and as the pope had declared the marriage of Henry with Anne Boleyn null and void, the

Catholic powers refused to acknowledge that Anne Boleyn's daughter Elizabeth was legitimate, and that she could be the rightful heir to the crown of England. They held that the Queen of Scots was the true heir, and she at once assumed the title of Queen of England, and quartered the arms of France and Scotland with those of England.

21. As it was necessary for the safety of Elizabeth that Scotland should not combine with France and Spain against England, her great minister, Cecil, directed all his efforts to make friends with the Scots, and to get them to contract an alliance with England.

22. The relation of Scotland to France and England was gradually becoming the reverse of what it had been at the beginning of Mary's reign. The conduct of Mary of Guise, and the overbearing attitude of the court of France, had alienated the minds of the Scots from their ancient ally, and the conciliatory policy of England led them not only to regard with more friendly feelings their old enemies on the other side of the Border, but even to look to them for aid. The dread of French supremacy, and the spread of Protestant doctrines, brought the Scots into closer relations with Protestant England, and hastened on that crisis in our history called the Reformation.

23. On being released from the galleys John Knox took refuge in England, where he remained four years, and was appointed chaplain to Edward VI. He returned to Scotland in 1555 and taught there for a short time, but for some reason he left for Geneva, and took charge of the English congregation in that city, where he formed an intimacy with Calvin. In 1559 he returned to Scotland at the urgent request of many of his countrymen, and became the leader of the Reformation movement.

24. In 1557 a number of the landed gentry signed a bond to co-operate with each other in protecting the Protestant preachers and spreading the new doctrines. This bond was called the *First Covenant*, and its subscribers became known as the "*Lords of the Congregation*."

25. In 1558 there were several outbreaks of popular fury against the Catholics. The image of St. Giles at Edinburgh was thrown into the North Loch, and afterwards burned. In the same year the burning at St. Andrews of Walter Mill, a quiet country priest, a man of blameless life and more than eighty years of age, made a great impression on the minds of the people, and deepened the hatred that had long been growing towards the churchmen.

26. Early in 1559 the church made an attempt at reformation,

but it was too late; for the council which met at Edinburgh for that purpose rose in April and adjourned till next year, but it never met



John Knox's House, Edinburgh.

again. When John Knox came to Scotland in May the country was ready to put itself under his guidance.

27. Mary of Guise, who for a time had seemed to favour the cause of the Reformation, now made a stand against it. She summoned certain preachers to answer for their conduct before the privy council at Stirling. Many of the nobles assembled at Perth to accompany them thither. The regent, in alarm, begged them not to come and she would withdraw the citations. They complied, but she did not keep her promise. The ministers' names were called in court, and they, for non-appearance, were outlawed and proclaimed as rebels. News of this came to Perth, where many of the nobles and others were assembled to hear the newly arrived Knox preach and exhort. Next day, which was the 11th of May, Knox preached

a vehement sermon against idolatry. A priest thereafter attempted to say mass. A riot ensued, and the "rascal multitude," as Knox called them, made a complete wreck of the monasteries and churches of Perth.

28. This was followed by uprisings of the people in other parts of the country to destroy the altars and images and other symbols of the Roman Catholic worship. Care was in many cases taken not to destroy the buildings themselves, and it should be remembered that the ruin of most of the grand old cathedrals and abbeys is due more to neglect and the wasting influence of time than to the violence of the Reformers.

29. The regent attempted to stem the tide of reformation by French money and French troops. She occupied Perth in violation of a treaty that she had made with the Lords of the Congregation. The Reformers took possession of St. Andrews, and held that city against the regent. Thence, in June, 1559, they marched to Edinburgh and occupied it. The court and the French retired before them.

30. The regent got more troops from France, and fortified Leith. The Lords of the Congregation obtained aid from Queen Elizabeth, in terms of a treaty made at Berwick in January, 1560. The Scots, assisted by an English force of 6000 men, laid siege to Leith. The garrison held out bravely, but suffered much from famine. While the siege was going on Mary of Guise, the regent, died in Edinburgh Castle. Troubles in France not only prevented the French from sending more troops to Scotland, but required the withdrawal of those that were already there. The French were therefore compelled to agree to a treaty which was ratified at Edinburgh in July, 1560. By this treaty it was agreed that both the French and the English forces should retire to their own countries and that Mary Queen of Scots should acknowledge Elizabeth as Queen of England.

31. On the 25th of August the Estates met and adopted the Confession of Faith drawn up by John Knox, and abjured the authority of the pope. Thus was accomplished the Reformation of 1560.

Summary.—Mary Stuart, when seven days old, became Queen of Scots in 1542, and Arran, the next heir to the throne, was made regent. Henry VIII. desired that the young queen should be married to his son, and had he been a little less imperious in his wooing the match might have taken place. Henry set free Angus and the noble prisoners taken at Solway Moss on the understanding that they would

advance his interests in Scotland; but, as they were suspected by the Scots, they could do little to further his designs. A treaty, however, was drawn up and ratified for the marriage of the queen after ten years. But Beaton and the French party carried her off from Linlithgow to Stirling, and said that the treaty, having been ratified in a packed Parliament, could not hold good. Henry in a rage sent Hertford with an army to plunder and destroy. Edinburgh was burned, and the towns on the Fife coast were not spared. To Evers and Latour for their services in Hertford's expedition were given the counties of Berwick and Roxburgh. Angus, not relishing their encroachment on his lands, defeated and slew them at Ancrum Moor. This enraged Henry VIII. more than ever, and he again sent Hertford to Scotland, who burned and destroyed villages, towns, churches, and abbeys. Protestantism was meanwhile spreading in Scotland, and George Wishart was burned for heresy at St. Andrews. Three months after, Cardinal Beaton was murdered for his share in that martyrdom. Henry VIII. died in 1547, but Hertford, now Duke of Somerset and Protector of England, tried to carry out the policy of the late king. He led an army to Scotland and defeated the Scots at Pinkie in 1547, but had to retreat after burning the Church of Holyrood and doing other mischief near Edinburgh. On Somerset's approach the young queen had been removed from Stirling to Inchmahome in the Lake of Menteith, whence she was soon after removed to Dumbarton, and then taken to France by a French fleet, the Scots having agreed that she should be married to the Dauphin. In 1554 Mary of Guise was made regent and Arran was created Duke of Chatelherault. The new regent became unpopular by giving high offices of state to Frenchmen. In 1558 Queen Mary was married to the Dauphin, and when Henry II. died, in 1559, she became Queen of France. As the legitimacy of Queen Elizabeth was not acknowledged by the pope, Mary laid claim to the crown of England. The Protestant doctrines were spreading in Scotland, and the Scots were becoming more favourable to Protestant England. John Knox, who had been for some time at Geneva, returned to Scotland in 1559 and became leader of the Reformers. Mary of Guise did all she could to stop the progress of the Reformation, but she was powerless against the preaching of Knox and the influence of the Protestant nobles. She got aid from France, and the Protestant Scots obtained assistance from England. While the Scots and their allies were besieging the French troops in Leith, Mary of Guise died. A treaty was then made, providing that both the French and English forces should be

withdrawn, and that Mary should acknowledge Elizabeth as Queen of England. The Estates met in August, 1560, adopted Knox's Confession of Faith, and abjured the authority of the pope. Thus the Reformation was accomplished.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded James V.? How old was she? How did Beaton try to get possession of her? On whom was the regency conferred? Where did the infant queen remain?

2. How did Henry VIII. wish to unite the two kingdoms? What Scots had Henry in his possession? What were these men afterwards called? On what conditions were they sent home? Name some of those sent home? Why were the Scots jealous of England?

3. Why were the Scots not jealous of France? What shows how strong the feeling of independence was among the Scots? What treaties were drawn up? What stipulations were inserted?

4. Who resolved to get possession of the queen? Who was at the head of this party? Whom did he instigate to carry off the queen? Where did they take her? What made this place appear safer?

5. When and where were the treaties ratified? Who afterwards repented of what he had done? What did the Scots now say? What effect had these circumstances on Henry? What did he swear? What act of Henry was declared by the Scottish Estates to be a violation of the truce? What was the effect of these actions?

6. When did Henry declare war? Whom did he send to Scotland? What directions did he receive? Where did Hertford land? What served to kindle a deeper hatred than ever of the English?

7. What two men received a grant of land for services rendered in Hertford's expedition? What counties did these lands comprise? Whose territories were encroached on? What had he the mortification of seeing? What did he do? On being repulsed what did he do? Who gave him aid? What battle was fought? When? With what result?

8. What was the effect of the battle of *Ancrum* on Henry? For what

purpose did he send another expedition under Hertford? Why was September chosen? Give an account of the damage done.

9. Why had George Wishart been banished? Where had he resided for some time? Where did he preach in 1545? What remarkable man joined him here? To whom did Wishart's preaching give offence? What became of Wishart?

10. What men in May, 1546, took possession of the castle of St. Andrews? How did they do it? What became of Cardinal Beaton?

11. By whom was the alarm spread? What did the townspeople demand when they came to the castle? What answer did they receive? Why did they not attack the castle? Who became the pastor of those within the castle? Who besieged the castle? How long did the garrison defy him? What led to the surrender of the garrison? What became of the garrison?

12. When did Henry VIII. die? Who succeeded him? Who became Protector? What policy did he carry on? How many men did he lead into Scotland? Where did the regent take up a position? What led to the defeat of the Scots? When was this battle fought? What church did Somerset destroy at Edinburgh? Why had he to return to England?

13. Where had the young queen been residing? Where was she taken for greater safety? What effect had the battle of Pinkie on the Scots? To what country did they look for aid? What aid did they receive? When?

14. Where did the Scottish Estates meet? What arrangement was entered into? Where was Mary to be taken? What did the English do when they heard of this? What course did the French fleet take? Where was Mary meanwhile lodged? When did she land in France?

15. How long after this did the

war with England continue? What fortresses were during that time recovered from the English? Why were these important?

16. When was a peace concluded between France and England? How did this treaty affect Scotland?

17. Who became regent in 1554? What French dukedom did Arran receive in compensation? How did the new regent give offence? For what purpose did she wish to impose a tax? Why did she abandon it? What did she wish to do with the strongholds of the nobles? What was the effect of this policy? When the regent proposed to make Tantallon a royal fortress, what did Angus say?

18. To whom was Mary Queen of Scots married? When? For what did the Scottish commissioners stipulate? What title was the Dauphin allowed to take? What demand of his was refused? Of what were the Scots suspicious? What would have made their suspicions certainty? Where did three of the Scots commissioners die? What was suspected? What motive was alleged for the crime?

19. When did the Dauphin become King of France? Under what name? How did France now seem to treat Scotland?

20. When did Mary of England die? Why did the Catholic powers refuse to acknowledge Elizabeth as queen? Whom did they consider the true heir?

21. Why did the English court strive to make friends of the Scots?

22. What had alienated the minds of the Scots from France? What was making them more friendly to the English? What hastened the Reformation in Scotland?

23. Where did John Knox take refuge on his release from the French galleys? How long had he been there? To what post had he been

appointed? After being a short time in Scotland where did he go? Of what congregation had he charge there? With whom did he form an intimacy? When did he return to Scotland? What position did he there assume?

24. What bond did a number of the gentry sign in 1557? What was it called? What were the subscribers afterwards called?

25. What martyrdom took place at St. Andrews in 1558? What effect had it on the people?

26. Under whose guidance was the country ready to put itself?

27. Who were summoned before the privy council at Stirling? What did many of the nobles proceed to do? How did the regent show her alarm? How did she act when they complied? What sentence was passed against the preachers? For what purpose had many of the nobles assembled at Perth? Against what did Knox preach? What led to a riot? What destruction was wrought by the mob?

28. What followed in other parts of the country?

29. How did the regent attempt to stop the Reformation? What was the occupation of Perth a violation of? What city did the Reformers then take possession of? What city did they next occupy?

30. Where did the regent fortify herself? What aid had she received? From whom did the Lords of the Congregation get help? What did the combined Scots and English proceed to do? What event occurred while the siege was proceeding? What caused the withdrawal of the French troops? When and where was a treaty signed? What were its terms?

31. When was Knox's Confession of Faith adopted by the Estates? What was thus accomplished?



CHAPTER XXIV.

MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS CONTINUED, 1560-1567,
7 Years.

Mary returns to Scotland,	1561
The queen marries Lord Darnley,	1565
Murder of Rizzio,	1566
Birth of James VI.,	1566
Murder of Darnley,	1567
The queen marries Bothwell,	1567
The queen imprisoned in Lochleven,	1567
The queen abdicates in favour of her son,	1567

1. Francis II., King of France, the husband of Mary Queen of Scots, died in December, 1560. He was in his seventeenth year, and had reigned little more than a year and a half. His death was a cause of grief to the queen, but the Scots felt it as a great deliverance, for it freed them from the danger they had been exposed to by the ambition of the Guises.

2. While the queen was still mourning for the loss of her husband, her disposal in marriage became a subject of interest in the diplomatic correspondence of almost every court in Europe. Queen Elizabeth interested herself in the matter, and urged that Mary should not marry a foreign king, but should look near home for a husband well disposed to the cause of religion, and friendship with England.

3. The Scots wished her to come home to her own country, and made preparations for her return. The Lords of the Congregation and the Catholics were each anxious to gain her over to their party. The former sent her illegitimate brother, Lord James Stewart, to influence her in their favour; the latter sent the Bishop of Ross to advise her to land at Aberdeen, where 20,000 men would be at her disposal. Her counsellors in France advised her to favour for a time the friends of the Reformed religion until she could find an opportunity of striking them effectively.

4. The Treaty of Edinburgh, by which the Queen of Scots was to abandon her claims on England and acknowledge Elizabeth as queen, had not yet been ratified. The ambassadors of Elizabeth endeavoured in vain to get Mary to ratify the treaty. Mary requested Elizabeth to grant her a passport that might be a protection to her in passing to her kingdom of Scotland, either by sea or through England. Elizabeth refused, except on condition that Mary

should abandon her claim to the throne of England by signing the Treaty of Edinburgh. Mary preferred to run the risk of capture rather than do this.

5. On the 14th of August, 1561, she embarked at Calais, and with an escort of four vessels set sail for Scotland. With tears in her eyes she gazed on the receding shores of France, and wept bitterly when in the darkness of evening they faded from her view. She slept on deck in the hope of seeing them at dawn. When she awoke they were still visible. She looked at them till they vanished in the distance, when she bade them adieu for ever.

6. Under cover of a fog she escaped the English cruisers. Favoured by the wind she made the passage in four days, and arrived at Leith on the morning of the 19th of August. No one expected her so soon, and the preparations for her reception were not completed. When horses were procured she was conducted with some degree of pomp to Holyrood; but when she looked on the sorry palfreys provided for



Holyrood House.

herself and her ladies, and thought of the gorgeous processions of France, she burst into tears. The people gave her a rude but hearty welcome, and endeavoured to enliven her first night at Holyrood by playing on three-stringed fiddles, and singing psalms at her chamber window. All who saw her were charmed by the beauty of her person and the gracefulness of her manners; and the kindly interest which she took in seeing justice done to the poor made her for a time extremely popular.

7. The queen's religion, however, was a cause of offence to the majority of her subjects. Before she left France it had been agreed that she should be allowed, in Scotland, to enjoy her own form of worship. This was not liked by John Knox and many of the more zealous Reformers, who regarded the mass as idolatry. When, a few days after her arrival, it was known that mass was to be celebrated in her chapel, the Master of Lindsay and his followers rushed into the court of the palace threatening death to the priests, but the Lord James placed himself at the door of the chapel and kept them back.

8. Although she claimed for herself the right to practise the rites of the Roman Catholic religion, she promised to maintain the Protestant form of worship which she found established at her arrival, and forbade any one on pain of death to attempt to make changes on it. She did this from policy rather than from a real desire to grant her subjects toleration, for in an interview with Knox, who told her among other things that "subjects may resist their princes if princes exceed their bounds, and that queens ought to be nursing mothers to the church," she said, "Yea, but yours is not the church that I will nourish. I will defend the Church of Rome." In saying this she doubtless spoke her real mind; but for a time she dissembled, and appeared to be zealous in supporting among her subjects the Protestant form of worship. She may have wanted to give her country rest from the war and anarchy which had long prevailed; she may have wished to conciliate Queen Elizabeth, who might be induced to recognize her as heiress to the crown of England; and she must have seen how dangerous it would be to oppose the Reformers, who were for the time all-powerful in Scotland.

9. These causes may account for the favour which Mary openly showed to the Protestants during the first two years of her reign, while at the same time she was secretly keeping up correspondence with *Pope Pius IV.*, her uncle, the *cardinal*, and others, regretting that she could not send prelates to the Council of Trent, and announcing her desire to restore the Catholic faith in Scotland even at the risk of her life.

10. The queen's brother, the Lord James, created Earl of Mar, and afterwards of Moray, was her chief adviser. In 1562 he led an army to the Borders for the purpose of restoring order and good government there. To effect this he apprehended fifty-three of the most noted Border thieves, of whom eighteen were drowned "for lack of trees and halters," and six were taken to Edinburgh and *hanged*.

11. In August of the same year the queen and Moray made a royal progress northwards to visit the Earl of Huntly, who kept princely state in his castle of Strathbogie. He held sway over all the country beyond the "Great Glen" and its lakes, now united by the Caledonian Canal, and had large estates in the Lowlands on the east coast. He had a small fleet of his own at Aberdeen, held intercourse with foreign courts, made alliances on his own account, treated with the Guises, organized his people with a view to the restoration of the old faith, and assumed so much of independence in his own domains as entitled him, like his ancestor in the reign of James II., to be called the "Cock of the North." The royal visit was professedly to do Huntly honour; but as the royal party was large and well armed, he suspected that more than mere honour was intended. He knew, moreover, that he had in his hands a great part of the Earldom of Moray, which he would not willingly give up to his great rival. Huntly wisely kept at a distance, but sent his wife to meet the royal party at Aberdeen.

12. The queen was invited to Strathbogie, but instead of going there she passed on to Inverness, where there was a royal castle held by Huntly as sheriff of the district. Its gates were closed, and the queen was refused admission to her own stronghold. It was besieged and taken by the royal party, and the governor was hanged. The queen's party then turned southward, and narrowly escaped being attacked while crossing the Spey. Huntly resolved to fight rather than submit. He came up with the royal party at Corrichie, eighteen miles west of Aberdeen, where he was defeated and killed. The power of the house of Huntly was thus broken, and a great danger to the Protestant religion removed.

13. Although it was sound policy on the part of the queen to keep on good terms with the Protestants, and although she was biding her time, it is difficult to account for the heartiness with which she seems to have engaged in the expedition against Huntly, the champion of her religion. She was always merry and undismayed, and at Inverness, when the lords came to her from the watch, she regretted "that she was not a man to know what life it was to lie all night in the fields, or to walk on the causeway with a jack, a Glasgow buckler, and a broadsword."

14. While she favoured the Reformers all went well with her. Her beauty, her accomplishments, her wit, her fine taste, her hunting and hawking, her brave deportment at the head of her troops, and her winning familiarity, made her a favourite with all classes of

her subjects. The gaiety of her court was such as had not been seen in Scotland before. Her income as Queen Dowager of France enabled her to keep it up without making heavy demands on her own subjects. Over all who came near her she exercised a kind of fascination. The fame of her beauty spread all over Europe. Her admirers were numerous, and many nobles and princes were among her suitors. Arran, the heir of the house of Hamilton, and who, after herself, was heir to the throne, had hopes of obtaining her hand, but he became insane. Chatelar, a Frenchman of good birth, distinguished as a poet and as a player on the lute, was so infatuated as to make his attentions to her grossly troublesome. For this he was tried, condemned, and executed at St. Andrews.

15. The question of the queen's marriage was of great political interest. The Reformers were anxious that she should marry a Protestant, for they felt that on this greatly depended the security of the established religion. The Catholics and the Catholic powers were desirous that she should marry a Catholic, and thus be the better able to bring Scotland back to the old faith. The Guises strove to bring about a marriage between her and Don Carlos, the heir to the Spanish crown, and Mary herself was not averse to such a union; but Catherine of Medici, the mother of her late husband, and the bitter enemy of the Guises, managed to prevent it. Among the queen's other suitors were the King of Denmark and the Protestant King of Sweden. Queen Elizabeth, for some unaccountable reason, proposed her own favourite, the Earl of Leicester, as a husband for the Scottish queen, but Mary showed great irritation at such a proposal. She, the widow of the greatest sovereign in Christendom, scorned to mate with a mere subject of the English queen.

16. In the midst of those intrigues **Henry Stewart, Lord Darnley**, her cousin, son of the Earl of Lennox, came from England and paid her a visit at Wemyss Castle in Fife. His mother, Margaret Douglas, was a daughter of Henry VIII.'s sister Margaret, the widow of James IV., who, it will be remembered, married the Earl of Angus. He was the nearest prince of the blood in Queen Elizabeth's court, and after the house of Hamilton heir to the Scottish crown. The queen fell in love with the handsome but foolish youth, and resolved to marry him. Darnley was a Catholic, and the Protestant lords felt that a crisis with respect to their influence and their religion was at hand. Moray and others of them opposed the marriage, and thereby fell into disfavour. Within three months of their first meeting at Wemyss Castle the intended marriage was

announced to a secret council held at Stirling, 15th May, 1565. A Parliament was not called on the subject, because it was believed that the Estates would not give their consent to the union. Darnley was created Duke of Albany, and the marriage took place on the 29th of July, 1565.

17. The newly married couple began to rule with great vigour. The queen, without calling a Parliament, proclaimed her husband as King of the Scots. This gave great offence to the Protestant barons. Moray and the leaders of the opposition were cited to appear before the king and queen with their array to give military service; but they armed in their own defence, and took up their position at Hamilton. Arran did not support them as they expected, and they went on to Edinburgh, where they gained no recruits. They were but 1000 strong, and being unable to cope with the royal army of 5000 that was marching against them they retreated to Dumfries, dispersed, and took refuge in England.

18. The cause of the Reformation was now in great danger. The Gordons had regained their power and influence in the north, and the Earl of Bothwell, a bold and unscrupulous man who was rising high in power and influence by the queen's favour, had married Huntly's sister. The Protestant lords, who, had they received from Queen Elizabeth the aid which her ministers urged her to give them, might have been kept in power for some time longer, were now in exile from Scotland, and Elizabeth's resolution not to help subjects in arms against their sovereign gave them no hope of being able to return. The Catholic powers were plotting to root Protestantism out of Europe. It was the design of Philip of Spain to get the Queen of Scots to re-establish the Roman Catholic Church in her kingdom. He purposed then to dethrone Queen Elizabeth and put Mary in her place. The Guises were to be restored to power in France, and by them the Huguenots or French Protestants were to be destroyed. Mary was eager to do her part, and had she got the aid from France which she urgently demanded there would have been real danger to the Protestant cause and to Elizabeth's crown; but Catherine of Medici, the mother of the young King of France, hated the Guises even more than the Protestants, and, therefore, instead of aiding Mary, she advised her to come to terms with the discontented lords and her Protestant subjects.

19. Terrible events of a domestic nature soon occupied Mary's mind, and helped to remove the danger of her being the means of undoing the work of reformation in Britain. The time of Mary's

happiness with Darnley was of short duration. She soon found that she was mated with a husband who was vicious, presumptuous, and a fool. He was not satisfied with the title of king, but wanted what was called "the crown matrimonial," by which, in case of Mary's death, the crown would have passed to him and his heirs. This was a request that the queen would not grant, and so enraged was Darnley that he offered violence to the officer who announced to him that it was refused. Quarrels became frequent between the royal pair.

20. There was at the court an Italian named David Rizzio. He had entered the queen's service as a musician, but being a man of great ability she had employed him as her secretary, by whom she carried on her secret correspondence with foreign courts. This man was hated by the nobles, and regarded with suspicion by the reformed clergy, as a base-born foreigner and a Roman Catholic. It was resolved that he should be put to death. Darnley was easily led to believe that it was through Rizzio's influence that he was refused the crown matrimonial. He was also made jealous of the Italian, who, in the discharge of his duties as secretary, had frequent private conferences with the queen. He was therefore easily induced to enter into a bond with Ruthven, Morton, and others of the nobles, by which they became bound to get for him the crown matrimonial, and to slay any one who should oppose them, while he undertook to protect them even though they should murder Rizzio in the queen's palace. He, moreover, became bound to use his influence to get the exiled lords restored, and to maintain the Protestant religion.

21. The result of this compact was that on the 9th of March, 1566, Morton, the chancellor, having the king with him, took possession of the great gate and all the outlets of the palace of Holyrood. Darnley took some of the conspirators to his own room, whence he led Ruthven by a secret stair to the queen's apartments. The queen was seated on a couch at a small table. Beside her sat the Lady Argyle and Rizzio with his cap on. They seemed to have no thought of danger. Darnley put his arm round the queen's waist. Ruthven, clad in armour and haggard from recent sickness, said to the queen, "Let yonder man, Davie, come forth of your presence, for he hath been overlong there." The queen desired to know why her servant was wanted, and on being told, she stood up, while Rizzio crouched behind her, clutching at the folds of her gown. The queen's attendants laid hold of Ruthven, but he shook them off, while the other conspirators rushed in and filled the room. Ruthven placed the queen in her husband's arms, telling her not to be afraid. Rizzio

was dragged out of the queen's presence, and all that could get near enough stabbed him until "they slew him at the queen's far door in the outer chamber."

22. There was commotion in Edinburgh when it was known that armed men had invaded the palace, and the provost and the townspeople hurried thither, but Darnley quieted them by telling them that he and the queen were uninjured. When Ruthven returned to the queen's apartment he assured her that her favourite was *safe*. The queen, ignorant of what had really happened, was left in charge of attendants who could be trusted, and Ruthven did not leave Darnley on that Saturday evening until two proclamations were prepared to be issued next day in name of the latter as king. The one was to call a muster of the well-affected inhabitants of Edinburgh to keep ward in the streets, the other was to dismiss the Parliament, which was about to pass a statute of treason against Moray and the exiled lords.

23. Next day the banished lords, who had been kept acquainted with all that was going on, arrived in Edinburgh. The queen was, about the time of their arrival, informed of Rizzio's death. She at once resolved to study revenge. With this aim she determined to conceal her anger, to lure back her husband to her favour, and so to detach him from the conspirators. On Monday she was all smiles and caresses. She met the banished lords and Morton, promised to forget what had happened, desired them to make a bond for their own security, and she would sign it. She had already won over Darnley, and affected to believe his protestations of innocence.

24. A little after midnight she, along with her husband, managed to slip out through the wine-cellar. Erskine, captain of her guard, who with six or seven mounted followers was waiting for her outside, took her up on the crupper behind him and carried her off to Seton House, whence Lord Seton gave them an escort to Dunbar Castle, where, early on Tuesday morning, they were received by the governor.

25. Thus were the confederate lords outwitted. The Earl of Bothwell lost no time in raising a force for the queen's protection, and on the 28th of March he escorted her and her husband back to Edinburgh at the head of 2000 horsemen. Ruthven, Morton, and the other conspirators, who had been denounced by Darnley, fled to England. Moray and Bothwell were reconciled, and the former made his peace with the queen. Darnley, whose treachery was made fully evident, was shunned and hated by both parties.

26. On the 19th of June, in the Castle of Edinburgh, Mary gave birth to a son, who afterwards became **James VI. of Scotland and I. of England**. After this, Mary's hatred of her husband continued to increase, and Bothwell rose higher than ever in her favour.

27. On one occasion, when she was holding a justice aire or court at Jedburgh, she rode from that town to Hermitage Castle, a distance of 20 miles, to see Bothwell, who had been wounded by Elliot of the Park. After staying with him two hours she galloped back to Jedburgh. This ride of 40 miles over a rough country was too much for her strength. She took fever, and was so ill that her life was despaired of. As soon as she was able she went by short stages to Craigmillar, where she became a prey to deep sorrow, and often repeated, "I could wish to be dead!" A divorce from her husband was now talked of, but she was afraid it might prejudice her son. Maitland of Lethington, however, significantly told her that means would be found by which she should be quit of him without prejudice to her son.

28. On the 17th of December the young prince was baptized at Stirling. It was thought strange that Darnley, though living in the castle, was not present at the ceremony, and that Bothwell should be called upon to do the honours of the occasion and direct the ceremonial. Through the influence of Bothwell, Moray, and others, all the murderers of Rizzio were pardoned, except George Douglas and Ker of Faudonside.

29. About this time Darnley fell ill of a skin disease which was said to be smallpox, but which some suspected to be the result of poison. Under the direction of his father, Lennox, he was removed to Glasgow. His enemies hoped that he might die, and that they would be thus relieved from doing what they had resolved upon. As Darnley, however, began to recover, Bothwell made advances to Morton, Lethington, and others, to join in a plot to murder him, and said it was the queen's wish that he should be removed, and that "she would have it to be done." They did not think it safe either to join in the plot or to reveal it.

30. The conduct of the queen towards her husband now suddenly changed. She set herself to quiet his fears and to regain his confidence. She went to Glasgow to visit him on the 22d of January, 1567, and prevailed on him to go, as soon as he was able, and live with her at Craigmillar Castle. A few days after, they set out for Edinburgh, where they arrived on the last day of January. The *sick man* was taken neither to Craigmillar nor to Holyrood, but to

an old house, close to the city wall, at a place called *Kirk of Field*, near to the site of the present university. There the queen visited him daily, and slept for two nights in a room below the king's bed-chamber. On Sunday the 9th of February she came at ten o'clock, went straight to his room and spent some time with him, talking cheerfully and kindly. It was understood that she was to pass the night, as she had done before, in the chamber below the king's, but she seemed suddenly to remember that she had promised to take part in a masked ball to be held that night at Holyrood, on the occasion of the marriage of a favourite French valet, called Bastiat, to one of her women. Bidding her husband an affectionate good night, she passed the door of her chamber without entering it. Had she gone into the room she would have seen that her bed had been removed, and would have noticed the sacks of gunpowder that Bothwell had, a little before her arrival, caused to be placed there.

31. Bothwell left Kirk of Field along with the queen, went to his apartments in the palace, changed his rich attire for a coarse doublet and a muffled cloak, and came back to his accomplices, Hepburn of Bolton and Hay of Talla, whom he had left to await his return. It is thought that during Bothwell's absence the king and his page discovered Hepburn and Hay, tried to escape, and got over a wall into the garden, where they were strangled. When Bothwell came back he found the match lighted, but it burned so long that he was going to look at it, when the train took fire and the explosion shattered the building and shook the whole city. The king and his page were found dead in the garden with marks of violence but none of fire. As the crowd from the city came fast to the spot there was no time to take the bodies back so as to make it appear that they had been killed by the explosion. Bothwell hastened to the palace, took a draught of wine and went to bed, where half an hour afterwards, when a messenger came and told him of what had happened, he pretended to awake. He shouted "Treason!" dressed himself, went with Huntly to the queen, set out for Kirk of Field, placed a guard there, removed the bodies, refused to let the ambassadors of France and Savoy examine the king's body, returned to tell the queen, who had not yet risen, that she was a widow, and held audience with her "within the curtain of her bed."

32. There was much excitement in Edinburgh. On Wednesday, two days after the deed was done, a reward of £2000 was offered to anyone who should reveal the author of the murder. No one dared to claim the reward, because the chief actor, though well known,

was too powerful to be openly accused. A writing was, however, affixed to the door of the Tolbooth, naming Bothwell and others as the guilty persons, and voices were heard in the streets at dead of night denouncing the murderers. The body of Darnley was buried in the chapel of Holyrood so secretly that there was much talk about it.

33. Though Bothwell was accused of the murder, the queen continued to show him favour, and seemed to take delight in his society. Lennox, the father of the murdered man, demanded that steps should be taken for the discovery and trial of the guilty persons. He besought the queen to assemble the nobility and Estates of her realm for this purpose. He named the Earl of Bothwell and others as the suspected murderers, and the queen intimated her compliance with his demands; but instead of the accused being apprehended he appeared to rise higher in the royal favour. Instead of the crown acting as accuser, Lennox was cited to appear, unattended by any men-at-arms, and make good his charge. As, however, Bothwell had 4000 armed men on the streets of Edinburgh, Lennox did not think it safe to appear, but sent one of his household to protest against the proceedings. Bothwell demanded and obtained an immediate trial, and as there was no evidence brought forward against him he was acquitted.

34. The queen's infatuated love for Bothwell became daily more evident, and those about her saw with dismay that she might marry him. Lord Herries, Melville and others warned her against the consequences of such a marriage, but she is reported to have said "she cared not to lose France, England, and her own country for *him*, and shall go with him to the world's end in a white petticoat before she leave him."

35. On the 21st of April the queen went to Stirling to visit her son. On her return Bothwell, with 800 men, intercepted her at Fountainbridge, near Edinburgh, and carried her off to Dunbar. It has been said that the queen was seized by her own consent, but the evidence of this is not clear.

36. Bothwell had been married to Lady Jane Gordon about a year before, and it was necessary that he should be divorced from her before he could marry the queen. In a civil court erected by royal authority sentence of divorce was pronounced against Bothwell at the instance of his wife on the 3d of May, and in a church court, two days later, the Archbishop of St. Andrews and several other clergy, whom the queen had commissioned for the purpose, gave *decree of divorce* on the ground that they were too nearly related.

After this the marriage was hurried on. Bothwell was made Duke of Orkney on the 12th of May, and on the 15th, three months after the murder of her late husband, he was married to the queen according to the Protestant form in the council chamber at Holyrood.

37. The newly married couple for a few days seemed happy in each other's society; but their court was deserted by the nobles, who were taking active measures to free the queen from what they called the bondage in which she was held. The newly married couple first became sensible of their danger when they summoned a muster of the feudal force of the kingdom to put down troubles on the Borders. No one obeyed the summons, and instead of the usual bustle and gathering of forces, there was ominous silence. Alarmed by this and other signs of hostility, the queen and her husband fled to Borthwick Castle, whither they were immediately followed by Lords Morton and Home with about 700 men. Bothwell escaped, and the queen, instead of joining those who had professedly come to deliver her, got herself let out at the dead of night dressed as a page. She then mounted a pony, rode across the wild moorland to Black Castle, joined Bothwell there, and rode with him to Dunbar.

38. On the 12th of June "the lords of privy council and nobility" issued a proclamation charging Bothwell with the murder of Darnley, with seducing the queen into "ane unhonest marriage, and with intent to murder her son." On the 14th the confederates heard that Bothwell was approaching Edinburgh with about 4000 men. At two o'clock next morning they went out to meet him. They had an army of 1800 horsemen and 400 footmen, well mounted and accustomed to military duty.

39. The hostile forces met at *Carberry Hill*, near Musselburgh. The French ambassador tried in vain to make peace between them. The lords wanted Bothwell to come forth to combat with one of them or leave the queen. From eleven in the forenoon till five in the evening the two forces stood facing each other. At length there was a parley between two small parties on either side, and it was arranged that the old gage of battle should be tried between Lord Lindsay and Bothwell, but the queen forbade the combat. The confederates now advanced. Bothwell, seeing his army thinned by desertion and indisposed to fight, took a hasty leave of the queen and rode off the field. The queen surrendered to Kirkaldy of Grange, who led her to the lords. They conducted her on horseback to Edinburgh, "and used her with all reverence;" but as they conveyed her up the High Street to the provost's house, opposite the

cross, the excited mob accused and reviled her. As it was not deemed safe to keep her in the city, the lords had her conveyed to Leith during the night, put on board a vessel, and sent to Lochleven Castle in Kinross.

40. When Bothwell left the queen on Carberry Hill he fled to Dunbar. On arriving there he remembered that he had left in Edinburgh Castle a casket that contained papers of great importance. He forthwith sent his servant to bring the casket to Dunbar; but the man was apprehended on his way back, and the casket fell



Lochleven Castle.

into the hands of Morton. It contained, among other documents, eight letters to the Earl of Bothwell and some poetry, called sonnets, all in the queen's handwriting. From these letters and sonnets it was inferred that the queen was privy to the design of murdering her own husband. The original documents were among Morton's effects when he was executed, and it is supposed that they came into the hands of James VI., who destroyed them. Copies of them, however, have been preserved in Latin, Scots, and French. Some think they were forgeries, but none of even the queen's friends who saw the originals ever doubted their genuineness.

41. On the 23d of July the Lord Lindsay and Robert Melville went to Lochleven Castle and required the queen to sign two papers—

the one an abdication of the crown in favour of her son, and the other the appointment of Moray to the office of regent during the young king's minority. The deeds were signed on July 24, 1567, and shortly after ratified by Parliament. Thus the reign of the beautiful but unfortunate Mary Stuart came to an end.

Summary.—Francis II. of France, Mary's husband, having died in 1560, her disposal in marriage became a matter of concern to all the courts in Europe, and Protestants and Catholics were each anxious to win her over to their party. The Scots were desirous of having her home, but Elizabeth refused her a passport through England or by sea unless Mary would abandon her claim to the throne of England by signing the Treaty of Edinburgh. The queen of Scots would not do this, but reached her own country in safety by sea, where she received a rude but hearty welcome. Her religion was a cause of offence to her subjects, and she had some difficulty in practising its rites, but she obtained toleration by promising to maintain the Protestantism of her subjects. Her half-brother, the Earl of Moray, became her adviser. He reduced the Borderers to obedience in 1562, and he and the queen, in the same year, broke the power of Huntly in the north. As long as she favoured the Protestants all went well with her. The Catholic powers were desirous that she should marry a Catholic prince. The Protestants felt that their security depended on her marrying a Protestant. Mary, however, chose for her husband Henry Lord Darnley, a Catholic nobleman, descended like herself from Henry VII.'s daughter Margaret, and to him she was married in 1565. The queen's happiness with Darnley was of short duration. He was a vicious youth. The nobles soon made him become jealous of the influence of David Rizzio with the queen. This led to a conspiracy, and Rizzio was murdered in Holyrood Palace almost in the presence of the queen. When she knew that her favourite was slain she resolved on revenge. She took her husband again into favour, and promised the nobles to forget what had happened, escaped from Holyrood, and fled to Dunbar. Bothwell raised a force in her behalf, and brought her back to Edinburgh in triumph. She gave birth to a son, afterwards James VI., in Edinburgh Castle in June, 1566. Her hatred of her husband now increased, and Bothwell rose high in her favour. This man resolved that Darnley should be removed. Darnley fell ill of a disease of the skin. The queen pretended affection for him, nursed him, and got him conveyed from Glasgow to Edinburgh, where, at Kirk of Field, he was murdered, the house

in which he lay having been blown up by gunpowder. Bothwell was blamed for the murder, but no one dared to accuse him in court, and he was acquitted. The queen, three months after the murder, married Bothwell. They seemed happy for a few days, but soon became conscious of being hated by all classes. They fled from Edinburgh. The Lords Morton and Home tried to deliver her from Bothwell, but she escaped from them and fled with her husband to Dunbar. The lords of privy council raised an army. Bothwell and the queen met them at Carberry Hill, when Bothwell lost heart and fled. The queen was taken to Edinburgh, and thence to Lochleven Castle, where she was constrained to sign an abdication of the crown in favour of her son in 1567.

QUESTIONS.

1. When did Francis II. die? Why did the Scots feel this death to be a deliverance?

2. What now became a subject of interest to the courts of Europe? What did Queen Elizabeth urge?

3. What two parties were anxious to gain her favour? Whom did the Lords of the Congregation send? Whom did the Catholics send? What did he advise her to do? What did her French counsellors advise her to do?

4. What treaty had not yet been signed? Who endeavoured to get it ratified? What did Mary ask from Elizabeth? On what condition was Elizabeth willing to grant this request?

5. Where did Mary embark? What escort had she?

6. How did she escape the English cruisers? When did she reach Leith? Why were there no preparations for her reception? Whither was she conducted? Why did she burst into tears? What kind of welcome did she receive? What for a time made her very popular?

7. What was a cause of offence to most of her subjects? What agreement had been made before she left France? By whom was this disliked? What happened when it was known that mass was to be performed in her chapel? Who interposed?

8. What did she promise to maintain? What was her motive in doing this? How was this shown in her *interview with Knox*? What may

have been her motives for supporting the Protestant form of worship?

9. How long did she keep up this show of favour to the Protestants? With whom was she meanwhile keeping up a correspondence? What regret did she express? What desire did she announce?

10. Who was Mary's chief adviser? What titles did he receive? For what purpose did he lead an army to the Border? How many Border thieves did he apprehend? What punishment was inflicted?

11. Whom did the queen and Moray visit in 1562? What portion of Scotland was under his rule? Where else had he large estates? What did he keep at Aberdeen? What had he done with a view to the restoration of the old faith? What was he called? Why? What made Huntly suspect that more than honour was intended? What had he in his hands which he was unwilling to give up? Whom did he send to meet the royal party?

12. Where was Mary invited? Whither did she go? What happened there? What was done to the governor? In what direction did the queen then go? What did Huntly resolve to do? Where did the two parties meet? What was the result?

13. What in the expedition against Huntly is it difficult to account for?

14. What made Mary at this time a favourite with all classes of her subjects? What enabled her to meet the expenses of her court? Who had hopes of gaining her hand? What

prevented the match? Who was Chatelar? Why was he executed?

15. Why were the Reformers anxious that Mary should marry a Protestant? Why were the Catholics anxious that she should marry a Catholic? What match did the Guises strive to bring about? Who prevented it? Whom did Queen Elizabeth propose as a husband for Mary? How did Mary receive the proposal?

16. Who was Lord Darnley? Trace his descent from Henry VII. What family was nearer to the Scottish throne than Darnley? Where did he visit the queen? What was the result? Of what religion was Darnley? How did the Protestant lords regard the match? When was the intended marriage announced? To what rank was Darnley raised? When did the marriage take place?

17. What did Mary do without calling a Parliament? To whom did this give offence? For what purpose were the opposing barons cited? For what purpose did they arm? Where did they take up a position? Who failed to support them? Where did they then go? Why did they retreat? Where did they take refuge?

18. What northern family had regained power? Whom had Bothwell married? Why did Queen Elizabeth not give the Protestant lords aid? What were the Catholic powers plotting? What did Philip II. of Spain purpose? Who were to be restored to power in France? Who were to be destroyed? Where had Mary applied for aid? What would have been in danger had she received it? Who prevented aid being sent? Why? What advice did she give to Mary?

19. What kind of a man did Mary discover Darnley to be? What did he wish besides being king? What would have been the effect of this? How did he receive the refusal?

20. Who was Rizzio? What had he been lately employed as? For what purpose? How was he regarded by the nobles and reformed clergy? What resolution was come to? What was Darnley led to believe? With whom did he enter into a bond? What did they undertake? What did he undertake?

21. Who took possession of the outlets of Holyrood? Who entered the queen's room by a secret stair? Where

was the queen? Who were beside her? What did Darnley do? What was the appearance of Ruthven? What did he say to the queen? What did she ask? What did Rizzio do? What did the queen's attendants do? What happened while Ruthven was freeing himself? What now was done to Rizzio?

22. Who quieted the people of Edinburgh? Who were left to take charge of the queen? What two proclamations were issued?

23. Who arrived in Edinburgh next day? When the queen was informed of Rizzio's death, what did she resolve to do? How did she proceed to carry this out? Whom had she already won over?

24. Where did she escape to?

25. Who raised a force for the queen's protection? When did she return to Edinburgh? Where did the conspirators take refuge? Who at this time was reconciled to the queen? How did Darnley come to be hated by both parties?

26. When and where was James VI. born? Who was fast rising in Mary's favour?

27. How did she show this when at Jedburgh? What was the effect of this ride on Mary? Where did she go on her recovery? What now did she become a prey to? What was she often heard to repeat? What began to be talked of? Why was she afraid to do this? What did Lethington tell her?

28. When was the young prince baptized? Where? Who did the honours of the occasion? Where was Darnley? Through whose influence were the murderers of Rizzio pardoned? Who were excepted?

29. What disease attacked Darnley? What did some suspect? Who caused him to be removed to Glasgow? What did his enemies hope? Why? To whom did Bothwell make advances for Darnley's murder? What did he say?

30. What change now took place in the conduct of the queen towards Darnley? When visiting him at Glasgow what did she prevail on him to do? Where was he taken when he reached Edinburgh? Where was this house situated? How did the queen show her attention to him there? What excuse did she make for not

spending the night of Sunday the 9th of February with him? What would she have seen had she entered her room?

31. Who left the Kirk of Field along with the queen? What did he do when he reached the palace? What is thought to have occurred during Bothwell's absence? What occurred after Bothwell's return? Where were the king and his page found? What marks were on the bodies? Why were the bodies not taken back to the house? What did Bothwell do? What did he do when a messenger told him what had happened? What did he do on reaching Kirk of Field? What request of the ambassadors of France and Savoy did he refuse? What did he do on returning to Holyrood?

32. In what condition was Edinburgh? What reward was offered? Why did no one claim the reward? What writing was affixed to the Tolbooth door? Where was Darnley buried? What caused much talk about the funeral?

33. How did the queen after this treat Bothwell? What did Lennox demand? What did he ask the queen to do? Whom did he name as the murderers? What did the queen intimate? What was Lennox cited to do? How was he to appear? Why did Lennox not think it safe to appear? What did he do? What did Bothwell demand? What was the result?

34. What now became evident? Who warned her of the danger of such a step? What is she reported to have said?

35. When did the queen visit her son at Stirling? What happened on her return? Where? Whither was she carried?

36. To whom had Bothwell been married? What was necessary before

he could marry the queen? How was this obtained? To what rank was he raised? When was he married to the queen? According to what form? Where?

37. Who deserted the court? For what were they taking active steps? When did Mary and Bothwell first become sensible of their danger? What made them sensible? What did they do? Who followed them? What did Bothwell do? How did the queen escape? Where did she join Bothwell? Whither did they go?

38. What proclamation did the privy council and nobility issue? What did the confederates hear on the 14th? What did they do?

39. Where did the forces meet? Who tried in vain to make peace? How long did the forces face each other? What arrangement was made between the two parties? Who forbade the combat? What did the confederates then do? Why did Bothwell leave without fighting? To whom did the queen surrender? Where was she taken? How was she treated? How was she received by the mob in Edinburgh? Where was she sent?

40. Where did Bothwell flee? What did he remember on arriving there? What did he do? How did the casket fall into the hands of Morton? What did the casket contain? In whose handwriting? What was inferred from these writings? Into whose hands is it supposed that the originals fell? What became of them? In what languages have copies of them been preserved? What do some think the papers were? What leads to the belief that they were genuine?

41. For what purpose did Lindsay and Melville go to Lochleven Castle? What were the two papers? When were they ratified by Parliament?

CHAPTER XXV.

JAMES VI., 1567-1603, 36 Years.

Accession of James VI.,	1567
The Regent Moray shot,	1570
Death of Lennox,	1571
Death of the Regent Mar,	1572
Kirkaldy of Grange hanged,	1573
Execution of Morton,	1581
The Raid of Ruthven,	1582
Mary Queen of Scots beheaded,	1587
The Gowrie conspiracy,	1600
Union of the crowns,	1603

1. In the High Church of Stirling on the 29th of July, 1567, the infant son of Mary was crowned, and began to reign as **James VI.** Moray, the illegitimate brother of the queen, as we have seen, had been appointed regent. The head of the House of Hamilton, who had only the infant king between him and the throne, might have aspired to the regency, but neither he nor his son had capacity to entitle them to fill that office.

2. Moray was in France when he was appointed, and it was for some time doubtful whether he would accept the regency. He arrived at Edinburgh on the 11th of August, and on the 15th, in company with Morton and Athole, visited the queen at Lochleven. He had several private interviews with his sister, in which he advised her not to disturb the quiet of the realm, nor the reign of her son. He also counselled her to refrain from attempting to escape, stirring up the people in her favour, seeking aid from England and France, and nourishing her affection for Bothwell. Having accepted the regency, he was, on the 22d August, installed in office, within the Tolbooth of Edinburgh.

3. He ruled with a firm hand. The command of Edinburgh Castle was taken from Balfour, whom he distrusted, and given to Kirkaldy of Grange. On the 15th of December a Parliament was held, and the acts passed in 1560 for the abolition of Popery, and the establishment of the Protestant Church, which Queen Mary had always refused to sanction, were ratified, and an amnesty for political offences was granted to all who would conform to the new government.

4. The doings of the Scots gave great offence to Queen Elizabeth, who thought that they had no right to rebel against their sovereign

or to pass judgment upon her. She tried to separate Moray from his party, but the regent let her know that he would "ware his life in defence of their action, and would either reduce all men to obedience in the king's name or it should cost him his life."

5. The Hamiltons were not favourable to the regent's government, as it placed them in a secondary position; nor did they heartily desire the restoration of Mary, as it would put them a step farther from the throne. Moray was, meanwhile, making vigorous efforts to make the country obedient to authority. He restrained the lawlessness of the Borders, and in January, 1568, caused four of the subordinate actors in Darnley's murder to be hanged. On the 3d of May he was at Glasgow, presiding at a justiciary court for the trial of criminals, when he was startled by the news that Mary had escaped from Lochleven, and had arrived at Hamilton Palace, where her adherents were gathering around her. He at the same time received a message requiring him to resign his authority into the hands of his queen, and that he and all who had offended her would be pardoned. Moray took prompt action. He imprisoned the herald who came to proclaim the queen, sent to Stirling for cannon, and gathered what forces he could to oppose her in her march to Dumbarton Castle, which was still held for her.

6. Moray had deemed the queen to be quite secure in the island fortress of Lochleven. His own mother, the widow Lady Douglas, who had at one time expected to be queen of Scotland, was keeper of the castle and its royal captive. Her son, George Douglas, whose heart the queen had won by her beauty and her blandishments, had been removed from the castle, but he left behind him a confederate named William Douglas, a lad of eighteen. This youth, on the evening of May 2d, after the castle gates were shut, led the queen out and locked the gates behind him. He then sprang with her into a boat and rowed to the shore, where George Douglas, Lord Seton, and a few others, were waiting to receive her. They all rode off, crossed the Forth to Seton's castle of Niddry near Linlithgow, and next morning, with a considerable number of followers, arrived at Hamilton Palace. The queen's forces soon amounted to 6000 men; but as a stronger position than Hamilton was desirable, it was resolved to proceed to Dumbarton.

7. Moray, as we have seen, prepared to intercept the queen's army on its way thither. The regent had not more than 4500 men, but being an experienced leader himself, and having such men as Morton, Home, Lindsay, and Kirkaldy of Grange to assist him, he hesitated

not to oppose the onward march of the queen's army, and with this intent he led his forces out to *Langside*, a village situated on a rising ground about two miles south of Glasgow. Grange seized the village. The queen's army attempted to force its way through, but in vain. There was a short struggle, but when Grange saw signs of wavering among the queen's troops he charged them and they broke their ranks and fled. Only one man of the regent's army was killed, while 300 of the queen's troops were slain.

8. When the queen saw that the day was lost, she fled, accompanied by Lord Herries and others—first to Sanquhar, next to Terregles, Lord Herries' house near Dumfries, and then to Dundrennan Abbey. Thence she proceeded to a part of the coast still called *Port Mary*, and, with Lord Herries and about twenty attendants, embarked in a fishing-boat, crossed the Solway, and landed at Workington in Cumberland. Queen Mary, knowing that there was now no security for her life in Scotland, thus threw herself upon the protection of Queen Elizabeth. When it was known that Mary had landed in England, some gentlemen of the neighbourhood came to her, and accompanied her to Cockermouth, whither the Deputy-captain of Carlisle came to meet her, and escorted her to Carlisle Castle.

9. Mary was no sooner safe in England than she began to intrigue for her restoration to power. She wrote to the court of France for help, and got a memorial of her case prepared, to be laid before the principal courts of Europe. She claimed to be Queen of England as well as of Scotland, and to induce the Catholic sovereigns to give her aid she made it appear that her cause was also the cause of the Church of Rome, which, with her success, would once more become the Established Church of both kingdoms. She at the same time wrote frequent letters to Queen Elizabeth, beseeching her for an interview. Elizabeth steadily refused to grant Mary's request until she should be cleared of the charge of being privy to her husband's murder. Mary wished that Elizabeth would either send her to Scotland with an army to enforce her claims, or else allow her to go to France. It did not suit Elizabeth to do either of these things, and, to give the Scottish queen less chance of escape, she was removed from Carlisle to Bolton Castle in Yorkshire.

10. After much correspondence it was agreed that commissioners from Elizabeth and Mary, and also from the Scottish Estates, should meet at York to try the question of the queen's complicity in Darnley's murder. Elizabeth, however, stipulated that the Scots should

be allowed, not to accuse their queen, but to justify themselves for their conduct towards her. Mary and the Scots, on the other hand, refused to acknowledge Elizabeth as judge or superior. The conference, after sitting at York for some time without any result, was removed to London, and thence to Hampton Court. The casket letters were produced and were believed to be genuine; but it did not accord with Elizabeth's notions of the divine right of sovereigns that a sister queen should be convicted by her rebel subjects, nor did it suit her to set up in Scotland a sovereign who laid claim to the crown of England, and whose pretensions the Catholic sovereigns might support in order to promote the interests of their church. The conference, therefore, ended without coming to any definite decision. Moray, however, was assured that Elizabeth would maintain his government and the young king's authority. Bothwell, whose evil influence over Queen Mary had brought all these troubles on her, escaped to Denmark, where he died in 1578.

11. At a meeting of the Scottish Estates held in July and August, 1568, thirty persons were cited to appear for trial on account of the rising at Hamilton and the resistance at Langside. Seventeen of these were Hamiltons. Their non-appearance caused them to be outlawed and their estates to be forfeited. An agreement, however, was come to. The Hamiltons made peace with the regent, and, on condition of their giving hostages, their estates were to be restored. But the hostages were not given, and as no faith could be placed in the Hamiltons, the regent seized both the Duke of Chatelherault and Lord Herries when they came to Edinburgh, and placed them under restraint.

12. Moray then marched to the north to put down Huntly's Highlanders, who had been let loose on the king's party, and were plundering their territories. He held his court at Aberdeen, and laid heavy fines on the northern chiefs as the price of their pardon. Moray next directed his attention to the Borders, and secured such obedience there "as never was done to no king in no man's days before." Order was secured throughout the land, but famine and pestilence prevailed.

13. The Hamiltons hated the regent's government, and nourished revenge for the manner in which they had been treated. They resolved to put him to death, and James Hamilton of Bothwellhaugh undertook to do the deed. He found his opportunity when the regent, on his way from Stirling to Edinburgh, was to ride in state through Linlithgow (1570). The long narrow street was on the

occasion crowded with people, so that he had to proceed slowly. This enabled Hamilton to take sure aim from a house with a balcony in front belonging to Archbishop Hamilton. He fired, and the bullet passed through the regent's body, killing a horse on the further side. In the garden behind the house a horse was in waiting, which the assassin mounted, and on which he made his escape westward into the territories of the Hamiltons.

14. The death of Moray was followed by a succession of regents, under whom there were great disorders, raids on the Borders, and an English invasion. Lennox, the father of the murdered Darnley and grandfather of the young king, was made regent. Lethington and Kirkaldy of Grange went over to the queen's party, and thus gained for it the castle of Edinburgh. The castle of Dumbarton, however, which had long been held for the queen, was taken for the king by Crawford of Jordanhill, April 2d, 1571. He was assisted by a hundred volunteers from Glasgow, and so skilfully did they do their work that they took the fortress without losing a man.

15. The Estates attempted to hold a Parliament at Edinburgh outside the city wall in May, 1571; but the fire of Kirkaldy's guns from the castle made the place too hot for them. They adjourned, and in August met at Stirling. Thither came from Edinburgh the Earl of Huntly with 300 horsemen and 80 musketeers. They attacked the town and cleared the streets. When the work of plunder began, the garrison of the castle, where the young king was at the time, came forth and drove them off. The regent, who had been dragged out of his house, was mortally wounded in the fray, and died in a few hours after.

16. The next regent was the Earl of Mar. Under him the country was exposed to all the horrors of civil war. No great battles were fought, but between the king's men, who had possession of most of the Lowlands, and the queen's party, which consisted of the Hamiltons in the west, and the Gordons, under Huntly, in the north, there was continual bloodshed and slaughter. Grange, with the guns of the castle, and cannon planted on the steeple of St. Giles, held Edinburgh for the queen. The king's party had possession of Leith, and protected themselves by a battery on the Calton Hill. Many citizens removed from Edinburgh. John Knox withdrew to St. Andrews. A truce, however, was made between the two contending parties in August, 1572, when John Knox returned to Edinburgh.

17. The news of the massacre of St. Bartholomew, which took place in August, 1572, filled all Protestant countries, and particularly

Scotland, with terror. John Knox denounced it, and in presence of the Ambassador of France called the king of that country a murderer. A great impetus was thus given to the work of Reformation in Scotland, and the people were becoming more decidedly Presbyterian, and less inclined to favour the queen's party.

18. The Regent Mar died a natural death in October, and was succeeded in the regency by James Douglas, Earl of Morton. On the 24th of November John Knox died in the sixty-seventh year of his age, worn out and exhausted by bodily labours and mental anxiety.

19. At the close of 1572 the truce ended, and Elizabeth, though she hated the idea of aiding subjects against their queen, yielded to the entreaties of her advisers, and sent 1500 men to assist the king's party in its attack on Edinburgh Castle. After an obstinate defence Grange surrendered, and on August 3, 1573, he was hanged at the Market Cross. Lethington is said to have committed suicide by taking poison. The hopes of the queen's party were now at an end.

20. Morton offended the Earl of Argyle by making him restore some valuable jewels held by his wife, the widow of Moray, which had formerly belonged to Queen Mary. Athole and Argyle having quarrelled about a Highland robber whom the latter protected, were cited by Morton to answer for breaking the king's peace. This made them so far friends as to unite against Morton.

21. About the same time D'Aubigné, the uncle of Darnley, came from France to the Scottish court, and by his fine French airs and polished manners gained such influence over the young king as to get himself made Duke of Lennox. Through his influence James Stewart, a son of Lord Ochiltree, was created Earl of Arran. He was an able and experienced soldier, but profligate and unscrupulous. They also united against Morton, because their power and influence was insecure as long as he lived. Morton was charged with having taken part in the murder of Darnley. He was tried, condemned, and beheaded in 1581 by a kind of guillotine called the *maiden*, which may still be seen in the Antiquarian Museum at Edinburgh.

22. Morton was an able but cruel man. He was the first who, in the civil war, would give no quarter, but slew and hanged without mercy. He set the example to the other nobles of filling the bishoprics with men, who, after receiving a small part of the revenues to themselves, agreed to hand over the rest to their patrons; whence

the bishops thus appointed were called Tulchan Bishops; the word *Tulchan* being the Gaelic name given to a calf's skin stuffed with straw that was wont to be placed beside a cow at milking time to make her give her milk.

23. After the execution of Morton in 1581 no regent was appointed, and James nominally became ruler, though he was as yet too young to rule. He was fifteen years of age. He had been educated by George Buchanan, the most famous scholar and poet of his time. The young king profited by his master's instruction to such a degree that he was reckoned the most learned prince of Europe. But his education only made him a pedant. In his boyhood he was a prodigy of learning, but in manhood he showed himself deficient in the judgment and strength of purpose which would have made his acquirements a blessing to himself and his people. Buchanan tried to teach him the true relations of a king to his subjects, and wrote a book regarding it; but James, instead of learning the lesson, grew proud of what he called his *king craft*, and believed that kings rule by an absolute right derived from God, to whom alone they are responsible for the manner in which they treat their subjects.

24. Lennox and Arran, after the death of Morton, were the king's chief advisers; but as they were moved by self-interest, they were distrusted by the people and hated by the nobles. A strong party of the nobility determined to deliver the king from his favourites. They found their opportunity when he went in August, 1582, to hunt in Athole. On his way thither he became the guest of the Earl of Gowrie, at his Castle of Ruthven or Huntingtower, near Perth. On the morning after his arrival the king was astonished to find the castle surrounded by several nobles and 1000 armed men. When he wished to go away he was laid hold of by the Master of Glamis, who, when the king entreated and wept, said, "Better bairns greet than bearded men."

25. For ten months he was kept under restraint. He was allowed to move from place to place, but was always guarded by a company of armed followers. Lennox escaped to France, where he died, but Arran was imprisoned.

26. When the king was at St. Andrews the Earls of Huntly, Marischal, and Argyle came thither with superior forces and delivered him. The parties came to terms, and Arran was set at liberty. The peace, however, was kept only for a short time, for the Ruthven lords having gathered a sufficient force seized Stirling Castle. Arran came to attack them with 12,000 men. Finding it

hopeless to contend with such a force, they fled from the castle, and took refuge on the other side of the Border. Gowrie was taken and executed in 1584, and Arran regained his former position of power and influence with the king.

27. For nearly two years Arran was supreme. But in 1585 there came from France in the company of D'Aubigné, a son of the former favourite, who had been Duke of Lennox, a young man of fine manners and handsome person, called the Master of Gray. He became a favourite with the king, and was sent as ambassador to England. Being a Catholic, and a confidant of the Guises, he learned many of Queen Mary's secrets, and revealed them to Elizabeth. Gray, knowing that Elizabeth desired the King of Scots to be freed from the influence of Arran, advised the English court to favour the return of the Ruthven lords. They, being joined at Selkirk by the exiled Hamiltons and the Maxwells, marched to Stirling with 8000 men. Arran fled to the Highlands, and the banished lords did homage and duty to their sovereign. A league was entered into with England, and Gowrie's estates were restored.

28. The king's mother had meanwhile been kept a prisoner in England. From Bolton, in Yorkshire, she had been removed to various places for safe-keeping, and lastly to Fotheringay, near Peterborough. With her income of £30,000 a year, which she had as Queen Dowager of France, she might have spent her days with all the dignity and honour of an abdicated queen. But she was continually plotting, and became the centre of intrigues having for their object the overthrow of Elizabeth and the destruction of Protestantism.

29. In 1569 the Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland raised an insurrection in her favour, which was suppressed. Three years later, the Duke of Norfolk was beheaded for taking part in a conspiracy to place Mary, whom he hoped to marry, on the throne of England. But the most formidable plot, and the one that proved fatal to Mary, was headed by Antony Babington, a rich young Catholic of Derbyshire. The object of Babington's conspiracy was to murder Elizabeth and set Mary free. The plot was discovered, and Babington and thirteen other conspirators were tried and executed in September, 1586. It was alleged that Mary was privy to the conspiracy, and that she had received letters regarding it and returned answers to them through a chink in her prison wall. Though Mary denied that the letters, produced to prove her guilt, were *written* by her or with her knowledge, she was brought to trial on

the 14th October, 1586, at Fotheringay. She was charged with conspiring against the life of Elizabeth. After two days the trial was put off, but on the 25th the commissioners met in the Star Chamber at Westminster and condemned her to death.

30. Queen Elizabeth withheld the warrant, and made a show of unwillingness to sanction the execution; but on the 1st of February, 1587, she gave the warrant, and on the 8th of the same month the beautiful Queen of Scots, now in the forty-fifth year of her age and the eighteenth of her captivity, was beheaded in the great hall of Fotheringay Castle. King James called no meeting of the Estates for the purpose of succouring his mother, or avenging her death; nor does the execution of their queen seem to have excited much indignation among the Scots.

31. When King James came of age, in 1587, he tried to reconcile his nobles to each other by inviting them to a banquet, and making those who were greatest foes march hand in hand from Holyrood, up the High Street, to the market-cross of Edinburgh.

32. In 1589 James was married by proxy at Copenhagen to Anne, Princess of Denmark. The bride was detained by storms, and the king went to fetch her home. He met her at Upsala, in Sweden, where he was married in person in November, 1589. To avoid the storms of winter he stayed six months in Denmark, and arrived with his queen at Leith on the 1st of May, 1590. They were received with great rejoicings.

33. In 1592 the Estates passed an act abolishing bishoprics, giving the government of the church to kirk-sessions, presbyteries, and synods, and making the General Assembly the supreme court of appeal, but the king or his commissioner was to be present at the meetings of Assembly, and before dissolving it he was to nominate time and place when the next Assembly should be held.

34. These measures were carried at the instance of Andrew Melville and other zealous ministers; but they were not satisfactory to the king, who had a liking for the church being governed by bishops, whom he managed to introduce once more into the church in the year 1600.

35. In 1593 another step was taken for the advancement of learning by the foundation of Marischal College at Aberdeen. The country was advancing slowly in civilization. In the same year the last Border clan battle of note was fought near Lockerby between the Maxwells and the Johnstons.

36. In the year 1600 the Gowrie Conspiracy caused great excite-

ment throughout the land. On the 5th of August, when the king was hunting at Falkland, Alexander Ruthven, the Earl of Gowrie's brother, came to him and requested him to go to Gowrie House at Perth, and see a man whom he had seized the night before with a pot of foreign gold pieces under his cloak. The king at first refused to go, but his love of money and mystery got the better of him, and when the hunt was over he went, not alone as Ruthven wished, but with an escort of twenty horsemen. When dinner was over Ruthven conducted the king up to a corner turret where there was a man in armour. Ruthven took the man's dagger and said to the king, "Sir, you must be my prisoner; remember on my father's death." The king remonstrated, and Ruthven said he sought not his life, but a promise which he should make to Gowrie. After exacting a promise from the king not to raise an alarm, Ruthven went to fetch his brother, but hearing an attempt being made by the king and the man to open the window, he returned, sprang upon the king, and tried to bind his hands, but was prevented by the man. The king struggled to the turret window and shouted for help. His attendants rushed in, and Sir John Ramsay stabbed Ruthven, whose body was thrown down the stair. When Ramsay came to the bottom of the stair he found Gowrie and five others attempting to ascend to avenge the death of Ruthven, but Ramsay gave Gowrie "ane dead stroke," and the tragedy was ended. There was an uproar in Perth, where Gowrie was provost, but the king escaped down the river in a boat.

37. The true nature of the Gowrie Conspiracy was never discovered, but letters have been found written by Logan of Restalrig, which render it probable that it was the intention of the Ruthvens to seize the king and convey him to Fast Castle, a stronghold of Logan's, and there make use of him to advance their own ends. The Estates met soon after, and passed such sentence on the Gowries as put an end to their name and dignity among the nobility of Scotland.

38. In 1603 Queen Elizabeth died. As all the descendants of Henry VIII. were dead, James VI., the great-grandson of Henry's sister, became **King of England**. Thus were the crowns of Scotland and England united, and the way prepared for that closer union which made the two kingdoms **Great Britain in 1707**.

Summary.—The infant son of Queen Mary was crowned as James VI. at Stirling in 1567. Moray, though absent in France, had been appointed regent. He returned home and ruled with a firm hand. *But on the 3d of May, 1568, Mary escaped from Lochleven, gathered*

her followers around her at Hamilton, and was marching with them to Dumbarton, when she was defeated at Langside by her brother the regent. She fled to Dundrennan Abbey, and thence across the Solway to Cumberland, where she threw herself on the protection of Elizabeth. In England she intrigued for her restoration, and sought help both from foreign powers and from Elizabeth. The Hamiltons and others were cited by the Estates to answer for the rising at Hamilton and their support of the queen, but as they did not appear their estates were forfeited. There was a conditional reconciliation and a promise to restore their estates; but the Hamiltons were so embittered against Moray, that they conspired against him, and he was shot by Hamilton of Bothwellhaugh in 1570. After Moray's death Lennox, Mar, and Morton were successively regents. There was a kind of civil war carried on for some time between the king's party and the queen's party. Maitland of Lethington and Kirkaldy of Grange went over to the queen's party and kept it alive till 1573, when Grange surrendered and was hanged, and Maitland committed suicide by taking poison. Morton offended Argyle by requiring him to give up Queen Mary's jewels, which were held by his wife the widow of Moray. He and Athole, with others, conspired against Morton, gained over the young king to their side, and got the regent condemned and executed in 1581. James VI., though only fifteen years of age, became nominally king. Lennox and Arran, two favourites of the king, on whom he had conferred these titles, became his chief advisers. The nobility, to deliver him from their influence, made the king prisoner while he was the guest of the Earl of Gowrie at Ruthven Castle (1582). About a year after he was freed from the Ruthven lords by the Earls Huntly, Marischal, and Argyle. After another effort to regain the king the Ruthven lords fled to England. Gowrie, however, was taken and executed. Arran regained his influence and kept it until the Ruthven lords returned, and being joined by the Hamiltons and Maxwells, compelled him to take refuge in the Highlands. The exiled lords did homage to their king, and the forfeited estates of Gowrie were restored. The king's mother having become the centre of intrigues against Elizabeth, she was tried, condemned, and beheaded at Fotheringay in 1587. In 1589 James married the Princess Anne of Denmark, and brought her home to Leith in 1590. Marischal College, Aberdeen, was founded in 1593. In 1600 the Gowrie Conspiracy to murder the king at Perth caused great excitement. The attempt was unsuccessful, and the Earl of Gowrie and his brother were slain. In 1603 Queen

Elizabeth died, and James VI. of Scotland became James I. of England.

QUESTIONS.

1. When and where was James VI. crowned? Who was appointed regent?

2. Where was he at this time? When did he reach Edinburgh? When he visited Mary what advice did he give her? When was he installed as regent?

3. How did he rule? To whom was Edinburgh Castle intrusted? When was a Parliament held? What acts were ratified? What amnesty was granted?

4. To whom did the doings of the Scots give offence? Why? What did she try to do? What did the regent let her know?

5. Why were the Hamiltons not favourable to the regent's rule? What steps did Moray take to promote order and justice? Where was he when he received news of Mary's escape? What was he doing? Where had Mary arrived? What message did he receive? What did he at once do? Where was Mary marching?

6. Who was keeper of Lochleven Castle? Who had been removed from the castle? Why? Who assisted in the escape of the queen? Who were waiting to receive Mary? Where did Mary first go? Where next? How many men had the queen? Why did they resolve to proceed to Dumbarton?

7. What did Moray prepare to do? How many men had he? Why did he not hesitate to oppose the larger force of the queen? What position was seized by Grange? Where is it? What did the queen's army attempt to do? What was the result?

8. Whither did Mary escape? What did she then do? On whose protection did she throw herself? Whither did the deputy-captain escort her?

9. What did Mary do as soon as she was safe in England? What steps did she take for this purpose? How did she try to influence the Catholic sovereigns? What did she wish Elizabeth to grant her? What answer did she receive? What reason was assigned? What did Mary then wish Elizabeth to do? To what castle was she removed? Why?

10. What was at length agreed to? What were the Scots asked to do? What did Mary and the Scots both refuse to acknowledge? To what place was the conference at last removed? What were produced? What did not accord with Elizabeth's notions? What did it not suit her to do? How did the conference end? Of what was Moray assured? Whither had Bothwell escaped? When did he die?

11. How many persons were cited before the Estates for the resistance at Langside? How many of them were Hamiltons? Not appearing, what sentence was passed against them? What agreement was come to with the regent? The agreement not being carried out by the Hamiltons, what did the regent do?

12. What rising in the north demanded the attention of the regent? Where did he hold his court? How did he punish the northern chiefs? To what district did Moray next direct his attention? What was the result? What caused distress throughout the land?

13. Why did the Hamiltons nourish revenge? What did they resolve to do? Who undertook to do it? When did he find an opportunity? What enabled Hamilton to take sure aim? To whom did the house belong? What happened? How did he escape?

14. What followed the death of Moray? Who was made regent? Who went over to the queen's party? What castle was thus secured by them? What castle was captured from the queen's party? What shows the skill with which the capture was effected?

15. Where did the Estates attempt to hold a Parliament? What prevented them? Where did they afterwards meet? Who attacked the town? How were they afterwards driven off? What became of Lennox?

16. Who was the next regent? To what was the country now exposed? Who were the parties? By what means did Grange hold Edinburgh?

Which party held Leith and the Calton Hill? Whither did Knox withdraw? On a truce being made what did he do?

17. When did the massacre of St. Bartholomew take place? What effect did the news produce in all Protestant countries? What had John Knox called the King of France on account of it? What effect had it on the progress of the Reformation? What form of religion was becoming common in Scotland?

18. When did Mar die? By whom was he succeeded? When did Knox die? How old was he?

19. When did the truce with England end? To whom did she send assistance? For what purpose? When was it taken? What became of Grange? Of Lethington? What did the capture of the castle put an end to?

20. How did Morton offend Argyle? About what did Athole and Argyle quarrel? What did Morton do? What did this lead them to do?

21. Who at this time came from France? How did he gain influence over the young king? To what rank did the king raise him? Whom did he get made Earl of Arran? What was D'Aubigné's character? Against whom did they unite? Why? What was Morton charged with? What followed?

22. What was the character of Morton? What was he the first to introduce? What did he set an example to the nobles of doing? What were the bishops thus appointed called? What does this mean?

23. When did James become nominally ruler? What age was he? Who had been his tutor? How had he profited by his master's instruction? What was he in boyhood? In manhood? What did Buchanan try to teach him? What did James become proud of? What did he believe?

24. Who were the king's advisers after Morton's death? Why were they distrusted? What did the nobles determine to do? When did they find an opportunity? Whose guest did James become? Where? When he wished to leave what happened?

25. How long was he under restraint? Whither did Lennox escape? What became of Arran?

26. How was the king delivered?

What did the Ruthven lords do? Who came to attack them? Why did they flee from the castle? Where did they take refuge? What became of Gowrie? Of Arran?

27. How long was Arran supreme? Who next became a favourite of the king? Where was he sent as ambassador? How did he learn many of Mary's secrets? To whom did he reveal them? What did he advise the English court to do? For what purpose? What caused Arran to flee to the Highlands? What league was entered into? Whose estates were restored?

28. Where had Mary been finally removed to? What was her income? Whence did she derive it? What did this give her the means of doing? In what was she continually engaged?

29. By whom was an insurrection raised in her favour in 1569? What was the result? Who was engaged in a conspiracy three years later on her behalf? What was his fate? What had he hoped for? Which was the most formidable conspiracy in her favour? Who was Babington? What was the object of the conspiracy? How many were executed for this? Why was Mary brought to trial for this conspiracy? What was the result of the trial?

30. What did Queen Elizabeth make a show of unwillingness to do? When did she sign the warrant? When was Mary beheaded? Where? How long had she been a captive? What effect had the execution in Scotland?

31. When did James come of age? How did he try to reconcile his nobles?

32. When was he married? To whom? Where was he married? How was this? Why did he stay in Denmark? When did he reach Scotland? How were they received?

33. What act did the Estates pass in 1592? To what was the government of the church intrusted? What was made the supreme court of the church? Who required to be present at the meetings of the Assembly?

34. At whose instance were these measures carried? To whom were these measures not satisfactory? What change did he manage to effect in 1600?

35. What college was founded in 1593? Where and when was the last Border clan battle fought? Between what clans?

36. What conspiracy took place in 1600? Where was the king hunting? Who came to him? With what request? What did the king at last do? When dinner was over where did Ruthven conduct James? What did he find there? What did Ruthven do and say? What did the king do? What did Ruthven reply? What promise did he exact from the king? What did he go to do? What made

him return? What did he then do? What prevented him? What did James manage to do? What followed? Whom did Ramsay find at the bottom of the stair? What did Ramsay do? How did the king escape from the citizens of Perth?

37. What was the probable object of the conspiracy? What was the effect of the sentence passed by the Estates on the Gowries?

38. When did Elizabeth die? Who succeeded her? What title had James to the throne of England? What took place in 1707?

CHAPTER XXVI.

CONDITION of the COUNTRY from the DEATH of JAMES I. to the UNION of the CROWNS.

1. In the social condition of the Scottish nation, from the reign of James I. to the union of the crowns, there was many an ebb and flow, but on the whole there was progress. The king was nominally the head of the nation, and law and justice were administered in his name, but the Estates, as the Scottish Parliament was called, were the real source of power and authority. To them the king himself, his ministers, and officers were held to be responsible, and it was even doubted whether the formal consent of the king was necessary to give their resolutions the force of law. They claimed the power of making peace and war, and of ratifying treaties. The long minorities had been favourable to the power of the Estates. As their great aim was to protect the king and govern in his name, there never was in Scotland much of conflict between them and the crown. Though the Estates did not admit the freedom of the king from personal responsibility, they were careful of his person. Even the most powerful nobles, when they acquired great influence in the councils of the nation from having possession of the king, and when his death might have seemed for their advantage, though they were sometimes severe in the restraint they put upon him, were always careful of his life.

2. The Estates sat in one house, but to prevent hasty legislation they appointed a committee of their number, called the "Lords of the Articles," to discuss and mature measures before they were voted on by the whole house. The Estates claimed the right to revise

the decisions of the king's judges when they were complained of. They appointed a committee for this purpose, called at first the "Auditors of Complaints," and afterwards, when they were empowered to sit wherever the king was residing, the "Lords of Council." In 1532 this tribunal for the administration of justice was recast, and a supreme court of law was organized called the Court of Session, which still exists as the highest court of appeal in Scotland.

3. The laws of Scotland were good, and the resolutions passed for the prevention of wrong-doing were excellent, but unfortunately the royal power was too weak to enforce them. When the law-makers became the law-breakers, there was no efficient means of calling them to account for their misdeeds. There were laws against oppression and crime, but we have seen an Earl of Douglas commit murder and set the royal authority at defiance. There was a Supreme Court in Edinburgh, but the Earl of Bothwell filled the streets of the capital with armed men and defeated the ends of justice.

4. James I. tried to enforce the laws and to curb the power of the nobles, and lost his life in the attempt. During the reigns of James II. and James III. the country was in a lawless condition. Crichton and Livingston strove for possession of the king, the Douglasses acted as independent lords rather than as loyal subjects, the Boyds abused their position by making themselves rich and powerful at the expense of others, and the nobles hanged the king's favourites, put himself under restraint, and defeated him in battle. James IV. made great efforts to have justice done, to repress and punish crime, and to promote the agriculture, trade, and commerce of the country. In his reign great progress was made in wealth and civilization. He reduced the Highland clans to obedience, and secured the admiration and loyalty of the nobility by his manly bearing, his love of martial exercises, and his firmness in punishing evil-doers. His tilts and tournaments became famous, and attracted knights from all parts of Europe to enter the lists against the Scottish champions, and to win favour and renown at the Scottish court. These foreigners brought with them refined manners and chivalrous ideas, which had a civilizing influence on the Scottish nobles.

5. Don Pedro, a Spanish ambassador to Scotland in the reign of James IV., reports to his court that the Scots spend all their time in wars, and that when there is no war they fight with one another; that since the present king succeeded to the throne they dare not quarrel so much with one another as formerly, especially since he came of age, for they have learned by experience that he executes

the law without respect to rich or poor. He goes on to say that Scotland has so much improved in James IV.'s reign, that it is worth three times more than formerly, on account of foreigners having come to the country and taught the people how to live; that they have more meat in great and small animals than they want, and plenty of wool and hides; that they export great quantities of salmon, herrings, and stockfish; that wild fruits are so plentiful that they do not know what to do with them; that they have immense flocks of sheep in the savage parts of the country; that their garden fruits are plentiful, and that they have good corn, which might be more abundant if they would cultivate the land. He notices that the people are handsome, hospitable, and vain, spending all they have to keep up appearances; that the king lives little in cities and towns, but passes his time in castles and abbeys; that he moves about from place to place to administer justice, and to consume the rents in kind which he has in every province; that he incurs no expense while travelling, but lodges with lords, bishops, abbots, and others of his subjects, who think that the greatest favour the king can do them is to go to their houses. He speaks of the women as courteous, graceful, and handsome, and really honest, though very bold, and adds that they are absolute mistresses of their houses, and even of their husbands. He observes that the towns and villages are populous; that the houses are built of hewn stone, and provided with excellent doors, glass windows, and a great number of chimneys; that there is a good deal of French education in Scotland, and that many speak the French language, because all the young gentlemen who have no property go to France and are well received there. This account of Scotland shows that great progress had been made since the time when it was visited by John De Vienne and the French auxiliaries in the reign of Robert II.

6. The battle of Flodden not only stopped this progress, but threw the nation back into a state of lawlessness and misrule. The country was again disturbed by the bloody and endless feuds of the barons, who set law at defiance, and oppressed and robbed the people with impunity. There is abundant proof of this in the criminal records of the time. One or two examples will show the nature of the crimes committed. Lord Somerville was accused of oppressing John Tweeddale in Carnwath, and robbing him of all his horses, mares, oxen, cows, and crops. Nicholas Lermonthe of Floors, and Andrew, his brother, had to find caution to satisfy the parties for their being *art and part* of the oppression done to Sibilla Corsby and James

Gray, scourging them and burning their house. In 1536 the same parties are accused of theftuously breaking into a house in the town of Smallholm and stealing goods therefrom, likewise for oppression done to John Edmonstoune of that ilk, keeping his five mark lands of Ednam waste for nine years, and cruelly wounding and hurting his servants, likewise for stouthrief and concealment of eighty sheep taken from the poor tenants on the lands of Raeburn.

7. The state of the Borders was still more deplorable. Every man's hand seems to have been against his neighbour. Homicide, robbery, fire-raising, felony, mutilation, and kindred crimes were of almost daily occurrence in these districts.

8. When James V. came to man's estate he did a good deal to make law prevail; but he was thwarted by the nobles, and his efforts were only partially successful. The minority of Mary was a time of great anarchy. The churchmen, who had often used their influence in softening the rude manners and restraining the oppression of the barons, had now become so corrupt, so licentious, and so ignorant, that they lost the respect of the people. For the support they gave to the French party in the state they also lost the favour of many of the nobility. These and other causes, combined with the spread of the Protestant doctrines, brought about the destruction of the Roman Catholic Church in Scotland, and the establishment of the Presbyterian form of worship.

9. The Reformation of the Church was a step in advance; but it was not followed by a general reformation of the social condition of the people. Many of the nobles were still greedy and grasping, and not a few of them have been accused of being reformers as much from a desire of getting possession of the church lands as from zeal for true religion. The Regent Moray ruled with a firm hand, but the succeeding regents had to contend with the turmoil of the civil war between the queen's party and the king's party. The Raid of Ruthven, the Gowrie Conspiracy, and the strife that accompanied these events, show that the nobles were as unscrupulous as ever.

10. The Scottish people in those times, being ignorant and imaginative, were much imbued with superstition. They believed that ghosts were to be seen in lonely churchyards, that fairies held revels in the moonlight, that brownies did work in farmhouses when all the inmates were asleep, that kelpies haunted dangerous fords and lured belated travellers to destruction, and that witches could transform themselves into hares and other animals, ride through the air on broomsticks to meet the Evil One, to whom they had sold themselves

for power to work wondrous cures, raise storms, and perform other cantrips. The ninth Parliament of Queen Mary passed an act in 1563 which decreed death to witches and consulters of witches. Soon after all the people were smitten with a fear of the devil and his mortal agents. Commissions of gentlemen and ministers were appointed in every part of Scotland to try and to execute witches. When James VI. grew to manhood he took a great interest in witch trials, and wrote a book on the subject entitled *Demonology*. Executions for witchcraft in this reign averaged 200 annually, and it is estimated that, from the passing of the act of Queen Mary to the accession of James to the English throne, upwards of 7000 poor creatures suffered death in Scotland for this imaginary crime. The belief in witches died out slowly. The last execution for witchcraft in Scotland took place in 1722 at Dornoch in Sutherlandshire. This superstition was not confined to the common people nor to the ignorant, but was shared in by king, lords, gentry, clergy, and citizens. It was, however, the result of ignorance, and it faded away before the light of civilization.

11. Education, such as it was in those times, was not neglected. In 1496 all barons and freeholders were required to send their sons to school till they have perfect knowledge of Latin, and thereafter to remain three years till they have knowledge and understanding of the laws. Universities were founded at St. Andrews in 1410, at Glasgow in 1450, at Aberdeen in 1495, and at Edinburgh in 1582. There were Grammar Schools in the larger towns and boroughs at an early period, and in the sixteenth century some of their teachers acquired great distinction. Andrew Simson of Perth, John Vans of Aberdeen, and Ninian Winzet of Linlithgow, were excellent scholars, and as teachers had more than a local fame.

12. In the universities and the schools Latin and the sciences of the time were taught with great success. Learned Scotsmen in the sixteenth century were to be found teaching in almost every university in Europe. Buchanan, who wrote and spoke Latin as if it were his mother tongue, along with Rutherford and Ramsay his countrymen, taught philosophy at Coimbra, in Portugal, and Sinclair and Dempster were regents in the college of Navarre; while at Paris, Montpellier, and elsewhere there were not a few Scottish professors held in high esteem.

13. The Scottish historians who succeeded Fordun and Wynton, with more of patriotism than truthfulness, tried to glorify their nation by magnifying its antiquity. Boece, Major, and Buchanan

told in classic language, and with such an appearance of truthfulness, that the Scots were descended from *Scota*, the daughter of the Pharaoh who was drowned in the Red Sea, that the antiquity of the Scottish monarchy threw into the shade all other dynasties. This antiquity was believed in by the learned till the beginning of the seventeenth century, and Scotland was always spoken of as the *ancient kingdom*. For long learned Scotsmen wrote in Latin, and thereby obtained a European fame. After the invention of printing the native literature began to flourish more vigorously than formerly. Dunbar, who lived in the reigns of James IV. and James V., wrote with a graphic richness and vigour that reminds one of Robert Burns. Gavin Douglas, Bishop of Dunkeld, about the same period wrote the *Palace of Honour*, and made the first translation into Scots or English of Virgil's *Æneid*. David Lindsay, in the first half of the sixteenth century, wrote poems of great humour, lashed the vices of the clergy, and did much to prepare the way for the reception of the reformed doctrines. Knox wrote prose in a firm and vigorous style, and did much to improve the language of his country.

14. Since the time of James I. the royal dwellings, the castles of the nobility, and the houses of the people had undergone a wondrous improvement. Palaces like those at Stirling, Linlithgow, Falkland, and Holyrood showed that a richer style of architecture had begun to prevail. The old square peel tower had in many cases been surmounted with turrets and other decorations in the French fashion, such as may be still seen in the castles of Glamis, Fyvie, Cragievair, and Crathes.

15. Beautiful churches in the French flamboyant style had been built up to the time of the Reformation, but that event put an entire stop to fine church building.

16. The town houses had become more substantial, being built of stone and lime, and sometimes, as in the High Street of Edinburgh, rising to a great height. Even in villages and country cottages there was some improvement, but there was still much filth and slovenliness everywhere. It is questionable if the Scottish nation was in 1603 so rich and comfortable as it had been in the reign of Alexander III., but the people were, at the union of the crowns, alive with the spirit of religion and politics, and their progress to a far higher civilization than that to which they had ever before attained was rendered not only a possibility but a certainty.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was nominally the head of the nation? Who held the real power? What did the Estates claim the power of doing? What favoured this power? Why was there little conflict between the Estates and the king? How is their care of the person of the king shown?

2. What committee did the Estates appoint? What committee was appointed to revise the decisions of the judges? What is this court now called?

3. Why were the laws weak in the prevention of wrong-doing? Give examples.

4. Why was James I. murdered? Mention some nobles who took advantage of their power. What progress was made in the reign of James IV.? What tended to refine the manners of the Scots during his reign?

5. Tell what you know of the report made by Don Pedro to the Spanish court as to the condition of Scotland in James IV.'s reign. What is shown by this report?

6. What effect had the battle of Flodden on Scotland? Give examples of the kind of crimes committed.

7. What was the condition of the Borders? What crimes were of almost daily occurrence there?

8. What prevented James V. from enforcing the laws? In what condition were the churchmen during the minority of Mary? What did this tend to bring about?

2. What do the nobles seem to have

been more anxious for than reformation? What was the character of Moray's rule? What show that nobles were still unscrupulous?

10. With what were the Scots at this time imbued? In what did they believe? What was the effect of the act against witchcraft in Mary's reign? Who wrote a book on *Witchcraft*? What was the average number of persons executed every year for witchcraft? When and where did the last execution for witchcraft take place?

11. What was the law as to the education of the sons of barons? When were each of the universities of Scotland founded? What kind of schools had the larger towns? Name some of the celebrated teachers.

12. What subjects were taught in the universities and schools? Name some of the Scotsmen celebrated on the Continent for their learning.

13. How did the later Scottish historians try to magnify the antiquity of the kingdom? Mention some of the literary men in the reigns of James IV. and James V., and name some of their works.

14. In what respects do the buildings show improvement?

15. What stopped the building of fine churches?

16. Tell what you know of town houses in the reign of James VI. Of country houses? What in the reign of James VI. gave most hope of the future progress of Scotland?

THE END.







